



Never Give Up

The **Eagle** في اللغة الإنجليزية

الصف الثاني الإعدادي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

By

Mohamed Ramadan

01129221246



## How to make a question

لتكوين السؤال يجب معرفة أدوات الإستفهام أولاً وأيضًا معرفة الأفعال المساعدة:

What	ما / ماذا ( فعل / حدث / مفعول )	How tall = What height	كم طول القامة
When = What time	متى للوقت ( الزمن )	How wide = What width	كم عرض / اتساع
Where	أين للمكان	How many	كم للعدد
Who	من للفاعل و المفعول العاقل	How much = What price	كم سعر
Whom	من للمفعول العاقل	How often = How many times	كم عدد المرات
Which	أي / أيهما (للإختيار)	How far = What distance	كم المسافة
Why	لماذا ( للسبب / الغرض )	How long = What length	كم طول
Whose	لمن / ملك من ( للملكية )	How long	كم المدة
How	كيف للحال / المواصلات / الطريقة	How deep	كم العمق
What kind	ما نوع	How high = What height	كم الارتفاع
What number	ما رقم	How fast = What speed	كم السرعة
What colour	ما لون	How big	كم الحجم
What size	ما مقياس	How old = What age	كم العمر

### الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة ( تكون موجودة في الجملة )

am - is - are / was - were	→	v. ing
do - does - did	→	inf. مصدر
can - could - may - might - will would - shall - should - must	→	p.p تصريف ثالث
has - have - had	→	

يوجد نوعان من السؤال:

السؤال بأداة إستفهام ويكون السؤال كالتالي

نحذف الإجابة ونستخدم أداة الإستفهام المناسبة ثم نضع الفعل المساعد بعد أداة الإستفهام.

**فعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد + Wh ?**

- What are you doing?  
➤ I am reading.
- What were you doing ?  
➤ I was playing tennis
- How do you go to school?  
➤ I go to school by bus

- **How long have you played football?**
  - I played football ~~for 3 years.~~
- **When will he arrive?**
  - He will arrive at seven o'clock
- **What could you do when you were young?**
  - I could ~~ride a bike~~
- **how many brothers have you got ?**
  - I have got ~~three~~ brothers.

❖ في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد تأتي بـ (verb to do) بعد تحديد زمن الفعل في الجملة الأصلية.

(do) إذا كان الفعل مصدر (بدون أي إضافات وليس ماضي) ✓

(does) إذا كان مضارع بسيط منتهياً بـ s / es نستعمل ✓

(did) إذا كان ماضي بسيط "التصريف الثاني للفعل" نستعمل ✓

- **When did they watch the film?**
  - They watched the film ~~yesterday.~~
- **Where did Ahmed go yesterday?**
  - he went to ~~the club~~
- **What does Ahmed want to be?**
  - Ahmed wants to be ~~a doctor.~~

### Why لماذا

⇒ because+فاعل+فعل بسبب

⇒ To+ مصدر لكي

Why do you exercise?

⇒ I exercise ~~because I want to keep fit.~~

⇒ I exercise ~~to keep fit.~~

### How often= How many times كم مرة

⇒ once/ twice/ three times + a + ( day / week / month....)

⇒ always - usually - often - sometimes - rarely - never

⇒ every ( day - week - month - year)

**How often do you play squash?**

⇒ I play squash ~~once a month.~~

⇒ I ~~sometimes~~ play squash.

⇒ I play squash ~~every month.~~

### How long كم المدة

⇒ since+ بداية الحدث

⇒ for + المدة

**How long have you been learning English?**

⇒ I have been learning English since 2014.

⇒ I have been learning English for five years.

**When = What time متى**

(yesterday - last - ago - next - tomorrow - at+ساعة - on+ يوم - in +سنة/شهر)

When will Maha be 20?

When did you went to London?

⇒ Maha will be 20 next-week.

⇒ I went to London last-year.

**(Whose + اسم + is /are .... ? ملك من**

تسأل عن ( my - his - her - its - our - their - your - 's )

نحذف الملكية ونضع الإسم بعد Whose ثم الفعل المساعد

Whose tablet is this?

⇒ It's my tablet.

**(How many + اسم + فعل مساعد + ؟ كم العدد**

تسأل عن العدد

نحذف العدد ونضع الإسم بعد How many ثم الفعل المساعد

How many sisters does he have?

⇒ He has three sisters.

**متى نكون سؤلاً يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو فعل ناقص؟**إذا كانت الإجابة بأحد الكلمات التالية:**(Yes - No - Of course - Well - Sure - Ok - perhaps - I think)**تحذف أي من هذه الكلماتنقدم الفعل المساعد أو الناقص علي الفاعل ويكون شكل السؤال كالتالي...**فعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد**

- **Have you visited Aswan?**
  - Yes, I have No, I haven't.
- **Did You watch TV?**
  - Yes, I did No, I didn't.
- **Were you teaching English?**
  - Yes, I was No, I wasn't.
- **Can he play football?**
  - Yes, he can No, he can't

في السؤال بمعنى هل إذا وجدت كلمة or لا تكون الإجابة ب Yes/No لكن الهدف من السؤال هو الاختيار

- **Do you like football or Tennis?**
  - I like football

لاحظ التحويلات التالية:

You ↓ I - We	you ↓ me - us	your ↓ my- our	yours ↓ mine-ours	Are you? ↓ I'm-We are	Were you ...? ↓ I was - We were	some ↓ any
--------------------	---------------------	----------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------------------	------------------

**Questions & Answers:**

Questions		Answers
What's your name?	ما إسمك ؟	It's...../My name is .....
What's your surname?	ما لقبك / إسم العائلة؟	It's .....
What's your date of birth?	ما هو تاريخ ميلادك؟	It's 13th of May 2002.
When were you born?	متي ولدت ؟	I was born in 2002.
What's your place of birth?	ما هو محل ميلادك؟	I was born in Giza.
Where were you born?	أين ولدت؟	
What's your address?	ما عنوانك؟	..... Street.
Where do you live?	أين تعيش	I live at..... Street.
What's your phone number?	ما رقم هاتفك؟	.....
What's your favourite .....	ما هي ..... المفضلة؟	I like .....
What do you like doing?	ماذا تحب أن تفعل؟	I like playing tennis
What's your job?	ما وظيفتك؟	I'm a .....
What do you do?		
Where are you from?	من أين أنت؟	I'm from .....
What is the time?/What time is it?	ما الساعة؟	It's .....
Could you lend me ....., please?		Yes, of course.
	هل ممكن أن تسلفني .....	I'm sorry I can't.
What's the weather like today?	ما حالة الطقس؟	It's very nice/hot/cold.
What's your nationality?	ما جنسيتك؟	I'm Egyptian/English.
What are you doing?	ماذا تفعل؟	I'm studying English.

## How to deal with a dialogue

أقدم معالجة لسؤال المحادثة وكيفية التعرف على الفراغات وكيفية الإجابة المختصرة وعرض الأخطاء المعتاد ظهورها .

- **كيف تستطيع أن تتعامل مع سؤال الحوار :-**

لكي تستطيع أن تجيب على سؤال المحادثة لابد أن تراعى أتباع بعض الملاحظات الهامة لكي تكون إجابتك نموذجية :-

1- لابد من قراءة المحادثة قراءة جيدة حتى تصل إلى الموضوع العام الذي تدور حوله المحادثة وهذا سوف يساعدك على توقع الإجابة النموذجية الدقيقة .

2- لابد من التعرف على الشخصيات التي تدور بينهم المحادثة من حيث النوع (ذكر أو أنثى ) والوظيفة (ضابط \ بائع \ موظف استقبال) وأيضا من حيث الجنسية والموطن . وهذا أيضا سوف يساعدك على إيجاد الإجابة الدقيقة .

3- **هذه الكلمات نعوض عنها بالضمير they (everyone - everybody- somebody - someone )**

4- **هناك أسئلة مختصرة**

And you?	وأنت	What happened?	ماذا حدث؟
What about you?	ماذا عنك	Why not?	لم لا؟
What else?	ماذا أيضا	Where from?	من أين؟
Where to?	إلى أين	What's wrong?	ما الأمر

**موضوعات هامة**

### في المستشفى At a hospital

- What is the matter? What's wrong with you? How do you feel? ماذا بك/ما الأمر/كيف تشعر  
⇒ I have a headache صداع /toothache ألم بالأسنان / stomach ache ألم بالمعدة / fever حمي أنا لذي
- Do you smoke? هل تدخن؟  
⇒ Yes, about 30 cigarettes a day. نعم. حوالي 30 سيجارة باليوم
- How long have you been smoking? كم المدة وانت تدخن؟  
⇒ for 5 years . لمدة خمس سنوات
- ⇒ You should stop smoking . يجب أن تتوقف عن التدخين.
- ⇒ You should take this medicine. يجب أن تأخذ هذا الدواء .
- ⇒ You should have a rest . يجب أن تأخذ راحة.
- I wish you speedy recovery . أتمني لك الشفاء العاجل.

**At a train station في محطة القطار**

- Can/May I help you ? هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟  
⇒ Yes, I'd like a ticket to ( Cairo ) نعم. أريد تذكرة لـ .....
- Single or return ? ذهاب فقط أم ذهاب وعودة؟  
⇒ Single , please. ذهاب فقط من فضلك.
- How much is it? How much does it cost? كم السعر؟  
⇒ It's 15 pounds
- How long does it take to ( Cairo )? كم المدة التي يستغرقها للقاهرة؟
- When does the it leave? متي يغادر؟
- When does the it arrive ? متي يصل؟
- ⇒ Have a nice journey . رحلة سعيدة

**At a Restaurant في مطعم**

- Can/May I help you ? هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟  
⇒ Yes, I'd like to have نعم. أريد أن أتناول .....
- What would you like to have/ drink ? ماذا تريد أن تتناول/تشرّب؟  
⇒ I'd like to have..... أريد أن أتناول.....
- What about the dessert? ماذا عن التحلية؟  
⇒ Ice cream, please
- Anything else ? أي شيء آخر؟  
⇒ No, thanks. لا، شكرًا

**Making a call إجراء مكالمة هاتفية**

- Can/May I speak to Ali , please ? هل أستطيع أن أتحدث مع .....  
⇒ Sure , hold on. بالطبع، أنتظر علي الخط.  
⇒ Sorry he is not in right now. أسف، هو غير موجود الآن.
- What time will he be back? متي سيعود؟  
⇒ I don't know. لا أعرف.
- Who's calling ? من المتصل؟  
⇒ This is ..... هذا .....
- Can I leave a message ? هل أستطيع أن أترك رسالة؟
- Can you take a message? هل تستطيع أن تأخذ رسالة؟  
⇒ Sure.
- Please, ask him to call me back. من فضلك أطلب منه ان يعاود الإتصال بي.  
⇒ I'm sorry. You have the wrong number. أنا أسف الرقم خاطيء.

**At a clothes shop** في محل ملابس

- Can/May I help you ? هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟  
⇒ Yes, I'd like to buy ..... نعم. أريد أن أشتري .....
- What size? ما المقاس؟  
⇒ size 50/small - medium - large  
What colour? ما اللون؟  
⇒ red, please
- Can I try it on ? هل أستطيع أن أقيسه؟  
⇒ Sure. بالطبع.
- How about this one ? ماذا عن هذا؟
- How much is it? How much does it cost? كم السعر؟  
⇒ It's ..... pounds  
⇒ Well, I will take it. سوف أخذه.
- Anything else ? أي شيء آخر؟  
⇒ No, thanks. لا، شكرا

**Meeting a tourist** مقابلة سائح

- Where's the .....? أين ال.....  
⇒ It's next to/behind/near/across from the .....
- Could/can you show me the way to .....? هل من الممكن ان توضح لي الطريق إلي.....؟  
⇒ Yes, go ahead then turn left.
- Is it far from here? هل هو بعيد.  
⇒ No, it's near. لا، إنه قريب.
- Where are you from? من أين أنت؟  
⇒ I'm from .....( England ) . أنا من .....
- What do you think about .....( Egypt )? ما رأيك في مصر؟  
⇒ It's fantastic/ wonderful . انها رائعة.
- How long will you stay here? كم ستمكث في مصر؟  
⇒ I will stay for 3 weeks. سوف أمكث ثلاثة أسابيع.
- Is this your first visit ? هل هذه زيارتك الأولى؟  
⇒ No, this is the second/third/ fourth visit. لا، إنها الزيارة .....
- ⇒ Have a nice stay time./trip. وقت سعيد.

## Comprehension قطعة الفهم

ليس هناك مادة علمية معينة يمكن الاعتماد عليها للتعامل مع قطع الفهم ولكن الممارسة والتدريب المكثف -  
 ناهيك عن الثروة اللغوية - هم أفضل الوسائل وأنجحها للتمكن من هذا السؤال وإجادته واضعين في الاعتبار التالي:  
 ✓ إقرأ الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة أولاً وهذا يبين لك ما تدور حوله القطعة ويحدد لك المعلومات التي  
 ستبحث عنها لاحقاً.

✓ إقرأ القطعة و لا تنزعج ولا تشغل بالك كثيراً بالمفردات أو الجمل الصعبة والغير واضحة الواردة في القطعة  
 فالمفردات الصعبة واردة لا محالة .....وما يلزمك هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع  
 القطعة لأن الكلمة يتغير معناها حسب السياق الواردة فيه .مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين.

وتنقسم أسئلة القطعة العادية **comprehension** إلى نوعين:

الأول : سؤال و إجابة وهنا يمكنك أن تكتب الإجابة بأسلوب القطعة أو أسلوبك الخاص أو الجمع بينهما .  
 الثاني : هو سؤال الاختياري وهنا عليك أن تكتب الإجابة المختارة فقط.

**رجاء**

1- " قبل اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة تأكد أن الاختيارات الأخرى غير صحيحة بالمرّة".

2- تأني في فهم السؤال ولا تتعجل وتذكر أن فهم السؤال يعادل نصف الإجابة.

و خذ بالك من جدول الاسئلة اللي جاى ده

Put a suitable title for the passage.	ضع عنوان مناسب للقطعة.
What is the main idea of the passage ?	ماهى الفكرة الرئيسية في القطعة؟
What does the pronoun.....refer to?	مالدى يشير الية الضمير.....؟
What does the underlined / black typed word ...mean ?	مادا تعنى الكلمة أسفلها خط ؟
Show...(Indicate...) Explain ... / Discuss the reasons.....	وضح- اشرح - ناقش السبب
Explain why/ What do you think ( is your opinion)of..?	فسر لماذا / مارأيك في.....؟
Do you agree \ oppose \ think .....?	هل تعتقد ( موافق ) ( تعترض ) ؟
From your point of view..... / from your opinion.....	من وجهة نظرك ( في رأيك).....
From the point of view of the writer(auther=narrator)	من وجهة نظر الكاتب (المؤلف) ..

### Read the following passage, then answer the Questions :

Spring is celebrated in different ways all over the world. It is a very special time of the year. In Egypt, Sham el- Nessim was first held to celebrate the start of spring in April many years ago. In Japan, people celebrate when small flowers first appear on thousands of trees across the country. People go outside and have picnics under the trees with **their** friends and family.

In the town of Zenica in Bosnia, people have a festival of eggs in spring.

Hundreds of eggs are cooked in a big pan for breakfast and these are given to all the people of the town for free. In Australia, the start of spring is celebrated in September! You can see about a million beautiful flowers in the city's main park, and you can also listen to music.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

1 - How is Spring celebrated In the town of Zenica in Bosnia?

.....

2- What does the underlined word " their" refer to?

.....

3- Why do you think so many countries celebrate spring ?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:**

4- When we enjoy activities on an important day, we .....

a) represent

b) celebrate

c) hold

d) play

5- In Egypt, the start of spring is celebrated in .....

a) March

b) April

c) October

d) September

**How to write an e-mail**

**To** البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

**From** البريد الإلكتروني للراسل

**Subject** عنوان الموضوع

**Dear** إسم المرسل إليه,

**I'm happy to send you this email** مقدمة . **I'd like to**.....

.....

.....

.....

**See you soon** خاتمة

**Best wishes**

**Yours,/ Love,**

إسم الراسل

**To** إلي

**From** من

**Subject** الموضوع

**Dear** عزيزي

**write this email to you** أكتب هذا الخطاب لك

**Best wishes** أطيب الأمنيات

**See you soon** أراك قريباً

**Yours,** المخلص لك

**I'm happy to write to you .How are you ?**

**I am pleased to write this email to you.**

**I hope you and your family are fine.**

**How are you and your family?**

المقدمة

want to tell you about/ that..... أود ان اخبرك عن.....

I'd like to invite you to/tell you about أود دعوتك علي /أخبرك أن

I thank you for ..... أشكرك علي .....

I congratulate you on..... اهنتك علي .....

See you soon. أراك قريبا.

Write to me soon. اكتب لي قريبا.

I'm looking forward to seeing you. متشوق لرؤيتك.

Best wishes. أفضل الأمنيات.

الموضوع

الخاتمة

## How to write a paragraph

- 1- يكتب موضوع الإنشاء في الصفحة قبل الأخيرة من كراسة الإجابة ثم ينقل بعد تنسيقه إلي المكان المخصص للإجابة .
- 2- تترك فراغ في أول سطر فقط.
- 3- أبدا الموضوع بجملة رئيسية تفيد انك ستكتب في موضوع معين  
(Computers play a great role in our lives.)
- 4- نكتب جمل قصيرة لتفادي الاخطاء.
- 5- كتابة جمل صحيحة من حيث ترتيب الجملة و من حيث الزمن.
- 6- نكتب الموضوع في زمن المضارع البسيط إذا كان موضوع عام و زمن الماضي البسيط إذا كانت قصة أو رحلة
- 7- نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام ( Wh . ) للمساعدة في استنتاج الأفكار وكتابة الجمل السريعة .
- 8- استخدام علامات الترقيم من حيث الحروف الكبيرة و علامة الوقف و الفاصلة و الاستفهام والتعجب.
- 9- جملة الافتتاح لها تأثير ايجابي علي القارئ فحاول ألا يكون بها اخطاء.
- 10- إذا لم تكن واثقا من كتابة كلمة معينة فابحث عن غيرها لان الأخطاء الإملائية لها تأثير سيء .
- 11- كن حذر من استخدام الأزمنة غير الصحيحة لان لها نفس الانطباع السيئ .

We all agree that .....is very important. It plays a vital role in our life.

كلنا نتفق أن ..... هام ويلعب دورا حيويا في حياتنا

منذمة موضوع إيجابي

We all agree that .....is very dangerous. It has bad and negative

effects on all of us. كلنا نتفق ان ..... خطير جدا. ربما لدية تأثير سيء وسلبي علينا

منذمة موضوع سلبي

## Irregular Verbs

be(is, am, are)	يكون	was/were	been
bear	يحمل / يلد	bore	born
become	يصبح	became	become
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
bend	ينحني	bent	bent
bite	يعض / يلسع / يلدغ	bit	bitten/bit
bleed	يزف	bled	bled
blow	ينفخ / يهب	blew	blown
break	ينكسر / يكسر	broke	broken
bring	يجلب / يربي	brought	brought
broadcast	يزيع	broadcasted / Broadcast	broadcasted / broadcast
build	يبني	built	built
burn	يحرق	burned/burnt	burned/burnt
burst	ينفجر	burst	burst
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
can	يستطيع	could	could
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
come	يأتي	came	come
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
deal	يتعامل	dealt	dealt
dig	يحفر / يحرث	dug	dug
dive	يغوص / يغطس	dove/dived	dived
do	يفعل	did	done
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
dream	يحلم	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
drive	يقود	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten

fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
feed	يغذي	fed	fed
feel	يشعر / يحس	felt	felt
fight	يحارب / يقاتل	fought	fought
find	يجد	found	found
fly	يطير	flew	flown
forbid	يُحرم	forbade/forbid	forbidden/forbid
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten/forgot
forgive	يسامح	forgave	forgiven
freeze	يُجمد / يُبرد	froze	frozen
get	يحصل	got	gotten/got
give	يعطي	gave	given
go	يذهب	went	gone
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
hang	يلق	hung	hung
hang	يشنق	hanged	hanged
have/has	يملك / يتناول	had	had
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hide	يختفي / يُخبيء	hid	hidden
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
hold	يحمل / يتمسك	held	held
hurt	يجرح/يؤذي	hurt	hurt
keep	يبقي	kept	kept
knit	يحيك	knit/knitted	knit/knitted
know	يعرف / يدرك	knew	known
lead	يقود / يتزعم / يوجه / يرشد	led	led
lean	يتكى / يميل / ينحرف	leaned/leant	leaned/leant
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
leave	يترك / يغادر / يهجر	left	left
lend	يُعير	lent	lent
let	يسمح	let	let
lie	يكذب	lied	lied

light	يضيء / ينير	lit/lighted	lit/lighted
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	lost
make	يصنع	made	made
may	قدّ	might	might
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
meet	يقابل	met	met
mistake	يخطئ	mistook	mistaken
misunderstand	يسيء فهم	misunderstood	misunderstood
overcome	يتغلب على	overcame	overcome
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
prove	يثبت / يبرهن / يتبين	proved	proved/proven
put	يضع	put	put
read	يقرأ	read	read
ride	يركب / يمتطي	rode	ridden
ring	يرن	rang	rung
rise	يرتفع / ينهض	rose	risen
run	يجري	ran	run
say	يقول	said	said
see	يرى	saw	seen
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
send	يرسل	sent	sent
set	يجهز/يضع	set	set
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewed/sewn
shake	يهتز/ يهز / يرتجف	shook	shaken
shall	سـ (سوف)	should	should
shave	يحلّق / يقص	shaved	shaved/shaven
shine	يتلألأ / يشرق / يضيء	shone	shone
shoot	يطلق الرصاص	shot	shot
show	يظهر / يعرض	showed	showed/shown
shrink	ينكمش / يتقلص / يذبل	shrank/shrunk	shrunk
shut	يغلق	shut	shut
sing	يغني / يُغرد	sang	sung

sink	يغرق / يغوص	sank/sunk	sunk
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
smell	يشم	smelled/smelt	smelled/smelt
sow	يبذر / يزرع / ينثر	sowed	sowed/sown
speak	يتكلم / يتحدث	spoke	spoken
spell	يتهجى	spelled/spelt	spelled/spelt
spend	يصرف / ينفق	spent	spent
spill	يسكب	spilled/spilt	spilled/spilt
split	ينشق / ينشطر / ينقسم	split	split
spread	ينشر / ينتشر	spread	spread
stand	يقف	stood	stood
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen
stick	يلتصق	stuck	stuck
swear	يُقسم	swore	sworn
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
take	يأخذ	took	taken
teach	يدرس	taught	taught
tear	يمزق / يشق	tore	torn
tell	يخبر	told	told
think	يفكر	thought	thought
throw	يرمي / يقذف	threw	thrown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
sweep	يكنس	swept	swept
upset	يزعج / يشوش	upset	upset
wake	يستيقظ / يصحو / يوقظ	waked/woke	waked/woke
wear	يلبس / يرتدي	wore	worn
weave	ينسج / يحوك	Weaved /wove	Weaved /woven
weep	يبكي / ينوح / يندب	wept	wept
wet	يرطب / يبلل	wetted/wet	wetted /wet
win	يربح / يفوز	won	won
write	يكتب / يسجل / يؤلف	wrote	written

Unit  
10

## A WORKING LIFE

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

health clinic	عيادة صحية	rain	مطر - تمطر
mobile health clinic	عيادة صحية متنقلة	working life	حياة العمل
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	all day	طوال اليوم
patient	شخص مريض / صبور	garden	حديقة
examine	يفحص	wet ≠ dry	مبتل ≠ جاف
equipment	معدات	travel ed	يسافر
medicine	دواء	study ied	يذاكر
far away	بعيداً	test	اختبار
operations	عمليات جراحية	university	جامعة
different	مختلف	van	عربة نقل
the same	نفس الشيء	few ≠ many	قليل ≠ كثير
talk-ed	يتحدث	ill = sick	مريض (صفة)
break	فسحة	parents	والدين
mobile	متنقل/هاتف محمول	wait ed	ينتظر
the past hour	الساعة الماضية	good news	أخبار جيدة
team	فريق	children	أطفال
text	نص	village	قرية
person	شخص	minute	دقيقة
in order to	لكي	all morning	طوال الصباح
things	أشياء	still	ما زال
something	شيء ما	underline	يضع خط تحت كلمة

## Confusing Words

health	صحة	driver	سائق	news	اخبار (لاتعد)	live	يعيش	learn	يتعلم
heathy	صحي	diver	غواص	new	جديد	life	حياة	teach	يُعلم

## Prepositions &amp; Expressions

do operations	يقوم بعمليات جراحية (كطبيب)	get better	يتحسن صحياً
cut a person open	يقوم بعملية جراحية (كطبيب)	do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل
have an operation	يخضع لعملية جراحية (كمريض)	do well	يؤدي جيداً
far away from	بعيدا عن	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة/يعمل
go very well	يسير علي ما يرام	do something	يفعل شيء ما

talk to	يتحدث إلى	on the beach	على الشاطئ
work in	يعمل في مكان	teach about	يعلم عن
work with	يعمل مع	for very long	لمدة طويلة
call an ambulance	يتصل بالإسعاف	wait for	ينتظر
take ..... to	يأخذ إلى	look tired	يبدو متعبًا
give medicine	يعطي دواء	in a van	في شاحنة صغيرة

## Opposites

the same	نفس الشيء	different	مختلف	wet	مبتل	dry	جاف
ill=sick	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة	start=begin	يبدأ	finish	ينتهي/ينتهي
busy	مشغول	free	حر	live	يعيش	die	يموت

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

do	يفعل	did	done	teach	يُعلم	taught	taught
take	يأخذ	took	taken	tell	يخبر	told	told
cut	يقطع/يقص	cut	cut	sleep	ينام	slept	slept
Choose	يختار	Chose	chosen	give	يعطي	gave	given
become	يصبح	became	become	go	يذهب	went	gone

## Definitions

ambulance	إسعاف	a van that takes sick people to hospital.
patient	مريض	a person that a doctor is helping to get better.
operation	عملية	when doctors cut a person open to help them get better.
equipment	معدات	things that people use in order to do something.

## Language Notes

**patient** شخص مريض (اسم)

⇒ Doctors help their patients to get well

**Patient** صبور (صفة)

⇒ Teachers should be patient with their students.

**help + مصدر (to) + مفعول**

⇒ Doctors help their patients to get well/get well.

**hospital** (مستشفى) (بها عدد من التخصصات)

⇒ I work at a big hospital in Cairo.

**clinic** (عيادة) (بها تخصص واحد او عدد من التخصصات)

⇒ I work at a clinic in Cairo.

**tool** (أداة يدوية بسيطة) (شاكوش - مقص)

⇒ The carpenter uses a lot of tools.

**equipment** (معدات ذات غرض معين مثل المعدات الطبية والالكترونية) (ليس لها جمع تعامل معاملة المفرد)

⇒ We haven't got the equipment to do big operations in the van.

**far away from** (بعيدا عن مكان)

⇒ I live far away from my school.

⇒ Some people live in villages far away from a doctor or a hospital

**faraway = far** (بعيد)

⇒ Aswan is faraway.

**work** (عمل) (إسم لا يعد)

⇒ I have much work to do.

I go to work at 8 o'clock daily.

**Job** (وظيفة) (إسم مفرد يعد)

⇒ I always have a lot of jobs to do on Saturday. What's your job?

## Reading

⇒ **Read about two doctors?**

⇒ **What is the same about their work? What is different?**

My name's Dr Aziz. I work in a mobile health clinic. The clinic is in a van. We've got two nurses, two doctors and a driver in our team. We've been doing this job for five years. I really enjoy it. Some people live in villages far away from a doctor or a hospital, so we visit the villages twice a month. We examine people and give them medicine if they are ill. We haven't got the equipment to do big operations in the van. If a patient is very ill, we can call an ambulance to take them to hospital. We also visit schools and teach children about their health.

I'm Dr Gamila. I work at a big hospital in Cairo. I finished studying at university six months ago, so I haven't been working here for very long. The hospital is very busy and today I started work at 6 a.m. It's very hard work, but I love my job. For the past hour, I've been talking to the patients. I've just visited a child who had an operation a few hours ago. It went very well. Her parents have been waiting to see her, so I'm going to tell them the good news.

### The Present Perfect Continuous المضارع التام المستمر

I / We / They / You	→	have	↓	been	+ V ing
He/She / It	→	has	↓		

- I **have been reading** a new book.
- She **has been travelling** for an hour.
- They **have been playing** tennis.
- He **has been sleeping**.
- She **has been cooking**.

I / We / They / You	→	haven't	↓	been	+ V ing
He/She / It	→	hasn't	↓		

- I **haven't been working** here for very long.
- She **hasn't been watching** TV this week.

### Wh Questions السؤال بأداة استفهام

عند تكوين سؤال بأداة استفهام في أي زمن نتبع الخطوات التالية:  
نحذف الإجابة ثم نتبع هذا التكوين

أداة استفهام + have/has + فاعل + been + v ing ?

فاعل + have/has + been + v ing .....

### How long بـ (since / for) نسأل عن المدة

- **How long have you been living in Riyadh?**  
⇒ I have been living in Riyadh for six years.
- **What have you been doing for the last 20 minutes?**  
⇒ We have been watching the match for the last 20 minutes.

➤ How long has Magda's father been working at the bank?

⇒ Magda's father has been working at the bank since 2000.

➤ Why hasn't Hassan been playing sports for the last few days?

⇒ Hassan hurt his leg, so he hasn't been playing sports for the last few days.

➤ What have they doing all day?

⇒ They have been working hard all day.

### الإستخدام:

#### 1- أحداث بدأت في الماضي وتستمر في الوقت الحاضر.

➤ I have been reading a new book. (I'm still reading it. /haven't finished it yet.)

➤ She has been studying English for five years. (She is still studying it now.)

❖ إذا وجدنا جملتين احدهما مضارع تام منفى ب (yet) يصبح فعل الجملة الثانية مضارع تام مستمر

➤ Mr.Khaled has been explaining but he hasn't finished yet.

➤ He has been painting his flat and he hasn't finished yet.

❖ إذا وجدنا جملتين احدهما مضارع مستمر ب (still) يصبح فعل الجملة الثانية مضارع تام مستمر.

➤ Mr.Khaled has been watching the match and he is still watching it.

➤ He has been painting his flat and he's still painting it.

➤ She has been learning English for 5 years and she's still learning it.

الحدث ما زال يحدث still الحدث لم ينتهي Yet

❖ أو عندما يكون هناك دليل امامنا يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر لنقول أن شخصا مازال في منتصف العمل أو أن الحدث لم ينتهي.

➤ Ali's clothes are covered in paint. He has been painting the wall.

#### 2- أحداث بدأت في الماضي ولها نتائج في الوقت الحاضر:

➤ It's been raining all day so the garden is very wet.

➤ The boys have been playing on the beach all morning, so they are tired now.

➤ Manal's brother has been living in England for a year, so his English is very good.

#### 3- مع For the last/past+مدة , فاعل + have/has been + v ing

ليس للمضارع التام المستمر كلمات خاصة به كباقي الازمنة ويستخدم مع الاتي:

(all/this+ زمن / since / ago )

❖ إذا وجدنا (for) (since) وكانت الافعال من الافعال التي تستغرق فترة زمنية طويلة مثل

**(live-work-teach-wait-study)**

- Mr.Khaled has been working as a teacher of English **since 1989.**
- We've been doing this job **for five years.**
- **For the past hour,** I've been talking to patients.
- Ali hasn't been living in this city **for very long.**
- He's been sleeping **for two and a half hours.**
- She's been talking on the phone **for 15 minutes.**
- They have been driving **for five hours.**
- I've been waiting here **for half an hour.**
- Sara has been living here **since May.**
- We have been studying English since 3 o'clock.
- **For the last ten minutes,** I've been walking to school.
- Maha has been cooking lunch **for the last hour.**
- **For the past 30minutes,** I've been studying English

❖ إذا وجدنا (for+ مدة + now) نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع اي فعل:

- Mounir has been reclaiming desert land and farming it **for 8 years now.**
- It has been raining **for three hours now.**

❖ إذا وجدنا كلمة مثل (all/ this + (day - year - month - week) :

- He has been playing football **all day.**
- It's been raining **all day,** so the garden is very wet.
- I've been studying **all morning.**

❖ يمكن استعمال ذلك الزمن بدون ذكر مدة زمنية مع (recently - lately)

- She has been watching too much television lately

**ملحوظة:**

عند وجود الكلمات التالية في الجملة استخدم فقط Present perfect (المضارع التام)، ولا تستخدم

لمضارع التام المستمر وهي: **so far/ already/ just/ never/ up till now/ yet:**

- I haven't finished my work **yet.**
- I have **already** finished my work.
- I have **already** been finishing my work. ( X )

Since+ بداية الحدث منذ	لمدة
1- مع السنين كتاريخ مثل 2010/1989	1- مع كلمة (سنة) year
2- مع فصول السنة winter / summer	2- مع كلمة (شهر) month
3- اسماء الشهور May/March/ June	3- مع كلمة (اسبوع) week
4- اسماء الايام Sunday / Saturday	4- مع كلمة ( يوم ) day
5- الساعات o'clock مثل 6 o'clock	5- مع كلمة hour/minute
6- مع last مثل last week/last month	6- مع the past /last مثل the las week
7- كلمات مثل yesterday/then	مع كلمات مثل ages/a long time/ long

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**Hamdi:** Hello. ( 1)..... have you been doing?

**Fareed:** I've been reading your book – it's great.

**Hamdi:** Have you (2)..... enjoying it?

**Fareed:** Sure.

**Hamdi:** What ( 3) ..... of books do you like?

**Fareed:** I (4).....books about history.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- A ..... is a person that a doctor is helping to get better.  
a) nurse      b) patient      c) dentist      d) chemist
- ..... is things that people use in order to do something.  
a) Exam      b) Equipment      c) Eraser      d) Exit
- If a patient is very ill, we can call a/an .....  
a) ambulance      b) van      c) truck      d) wheelchair
- Doctors..... patients and give them medicine.  
a) damage      b) examine      c) hit      d) order
- The mobile health clinic can be in a.....  
a) van      b)hut      c) house      d) cupboard
- The mobile health clinic hasn't got the equipment to do big.....  
a) stations      b) population      c) operations      d) options
- A mobile ..... clinic visited our village yesterday.  
a) healthy      b) unhealthy      c) health      d) illness
- Doctors usually give patients .....  
a) ambulances      b) medicine      c) sweets      d) books
- A/An ..... is a van that takes sick people to hospital.  
a) car      b) bus      c)train      d) ambulance
- Manal's brother ..... in England for a year, so his English is very good.  
a) lived      b) has been living      c) is living      d) was living

- 11- You look tired. What..... ?  
 a) can you do    b) you have been doing    c) do you do    d) have you been doing
- 12- I'm sure Hanan will do well in her test. She..... all weekend.  
 a) studie    b) has been studied    c) studied    d) has been studying
- 13- She's been working here..... very long.  
 a) for    b) since    c)by    d)just
- 14- ..... been cooking for long ?  
 a) Does she    b) Has she    c) Can she    d) Was she
- 15- They have been playing on the beach..... morning.  
 a) already    b)for    c) all    d) last
- 16- Have you been waiting ..... the bus for a long time ?  
 a) to    b) with    c) for    d) at
- 17- How long have you been..... English ?  
 a) learn    b) learning    c) learnt    d) learns
- 18- It's been..... all day, so the garden is very wet.  
 a) rained    b)rain    c) raining    d) rains
- 19- What..... he been reading ? - A comic story.  
 a) is    b) has    c) was    d) did
- 20- How long have you been..... ?  
 a) sleep    b) slept    c) sleeping    d) to sleep
- 21- For the past hour, I've been..... to patients.  
 a) shouting    b) talking    c) playing    d) taking
- 22- I'm going to..... an operation next week.  
 a) have    b) play    c)take    d) drive
- 23- An ..... is when doctors cut a person open to help them get better.  
 a) ambulance    b) equipment    c) invention    d) operation
- 24- ..... the past hour, I've been talking to patients.  
 a) since    b) last    c) for    d) ago
- 25- Manal broke her leg, so they took her to hospital in an .....  
 a) ambulance    b) accident    c) album    d) envelope
- 26- The doctor has ..... to the patient all morning  
 a) been talking    b) talking    c) talk    d) talks
- 27- Mona has been learning English since she ..... six.  
 a) is    b) been    c) has been    d) was
- 28- If you are ill, the doctor will .....you.  
 a) examine    b) check    c) revise    d) give
- 29- Ten ..... are waiting to see the doctor.  
 a) operations    b) stations    c) ambulances    d) patients

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- Yesterday, the operation did very well. (.....)
- 2- I'm going to say my father the good news. (.....)

- 3- Patients take medicine to **go** better. (.....)
- 4- This village is **faraway** from the nearest city. (.....)
- 5- Ahmed and Ramy **has** been playing tennis. (.....)
- 6- **What you** been doing for the past hour? (.....)
- 7- For the last 2 hours, I **watched** that new film. (.....)
- 8- We've been studying **in** 3 o'clock. (.....)
- 9- What game have you been **played** on your computer ? (.....)
- 10- Dr Aziz hasn't got **equip** to do big operations. (.....)
- 11- An ambulance is a kind of **fan**. (.....)
- 12- He **have** been reading the newspaper. (.....)
- 13- The doctor **revised** the patient's chest. (.....)

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&4

archaeologist	عالم آثار	interviewer	محاوّر
chemist	صيدلي / كيميائي	important	مهم
dentist	طبيب أسنان	question	سؤال
laboratory	معمل	coins	عملات معدنية
chemistry	كيمياء	watch	ساعة يد
ancient site	موقع أثري	notebook	كراسة
diary	مفكرة يومية	university	جامعة
make medicine	يصنع دواء	test	يختبر / إختبار
plan activities	يخطط للقيام بأنشطة	mobile phone	هاتف محمول
find out	يكتشف	What kind ?	ما نوع
activities	انشطة	During the day	أثناء اليوم
calendar	تقويم	tooth - teeth	سنة - أسنان
results	نتائج	speaker	متحدث
patients	مرضى	How long	كم طول المدة
enjoyable	ممتع	How often	كم مرة
think of	يفكر في	during	أثناء / خلال
matter	أمر	prefer	يفضل
sweets	حلويات	dial	يطلب رقم هاتف
project	مشروع	survey	إستطلاع رأي
few months	أشهر قليلة	important ≠ unimportant	هام ≠ غير هام
objects	أشياء	Noisy ≠ quiet	صاخب ≠ هاديء
ancient ≠ modern	قديم ≠ حديث	examine	يفحص

## Confusing Words

hurt	يؤذي/ يؤلم	taste	يتذوق	boring	ممل	dairy	منتجات ألبان
heart	قلب	test	إختبار/ يختبر	bored	يشعر بالملل	diary	مفكرة يومية

## Prepositions & Expressions

make medicine	يصنع دواء	What's the matter?	ما الامر / ماذا بك
test medicine	يختبر الدواء	have enough time	لديه وقت كاف
the results of a test	نتائج اختبار	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
see the results	يري النتائج	help with	يساعد في
write down	يدون	look for	يبحث عن
think of/ about	يفكر في	find out	يكتشف (معلومات)
have a look	يلقي نظرة	What about you ?	ماذا عنك
do a job	يؤدي وظيفة/ عمل	in pairs	في ثنائيات
talk about	يتكلم عن شئ	get bored	يصاب بالملل
long ago	منذ زمن بعيد	It's important to	مهم أن
do activities	يؤدي أنشطة	talk on the phone	يتحدث في التلفون

## Opposites

important	unimportant	teach	learn
ancient	Modern	quiet	noisy

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

hurt	يؤذي/ يؤلم	hurt	hurt	see	يرى	saw	seen
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	have	يمتلك	had	had
understand	يفهم	understood	understood	show	يعرض	showed	shown

## Language Notes

**start to + المصدر / start + المصدر + ing/ Noun يبدأ**

- ⇒ I started to do homework.
- ⇒ When did you start doing this job?
- ⇒ When did you start this job?

**إنه ..... أن مصدر + to + صفة + It's**

- ⇒ It's important to plan your time.
- ⇒ It's unhealthy to eat too many sweets.

job	Where does he-she work?	What does she-he do?
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• doctor</li> <li>• dentist</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in a hospital</li> <li>• in a clinic</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• examines patients (teeth)</li> <li>• does operations</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• chemist</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in a laboratory</li> <li>• in a chemist's</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• helps to make medicine</li> <li>• tests new medicine</li> <li>• gives patients the right medicine</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• archaeologists</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in museums</li> <li>• at ancient sites</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• looks for pots, coins and other objects from the past one</li> <li>• finds out about people who lived long ago</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• teacher</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in schools</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• helps children to learn new information</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a farmer</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in fields</li> <li>• on farms</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• look after animals</li> <li>• grow plants</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• architect</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in an office</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• designs buildings</li> </ul>

## Tapescript



**Write down all the jobs you can think of.**

**Which jobs would you like to do? Why?**

### One (chemist)

**Interviewer:** Today I'm talking to some people about the important jobs they do. Good morning! Can I ask you a question? Where do you work?

**Woman:** I work in a laboratory.

**Interviewer:** When did you start doing this job?

**Woman:** I started this job three years ago. Before that, I was at university. I was studying chemistry.

**Interviewer:** And what job do you do in the laboratory?

**Woman:** I help to make medicine. For the past few months, we've been testing some new medicine in the laboratory. At the moment, I'm waiting to see the results of a test. If the results are good then we can start giving the medicine to

### Two (Dentist)

**Interviewer:** Here is someone who works in a hospital. But he isn't a doctor.

**Man:** That is right. I examine patients, but only examine their teeth!

**Interviewer:** How long have you been working here ?

**Man:** I've been working here for ten years. Some of my patients have been coming to see me since they were three or four years old!

**Interviewer:** How often do patients come and see you?

**Man:** They come and see me every six months. Here is a patient now. Hello!  
What's the matter?

**Boy:** My tooth hurts.

**Man:** Have you been eating too many sweets ? Sit down and I'll have a look.

### Three (Archaeologist)

**Interviewer:** I'm talking to Mr Zaki who is working at an ancient site! When did you start working here?

**Mr Zaki:** I first came here six months ago. I was working in a museum when I heard about this project.

**Interviewer:** What are you doing at the moment?

**Mr Zaki:** I'm looking for pots, coins and other objects from the past. Long ago, people lived at this ancient site. We want to find out more about these

### An architect

In this job, people help to design important buildings, for example a house, a museum, a school or a sports stadium.

### A teacher

People who do this job usually work in schools. They help children to learn important information about many subjects. It is difficult but enjoyable work.

### A farmer

People who do this job usually work in fields. They understand nature and are usually good at helping animals and plants to grow.

### A chemist

People who do this job often work in a laboratory. They sometimes help to find new medicines to help people who are ill.

### Archaeologist

In this job, people often work at ancient sites. They look for buildings and objects from the past. Some of the important objects that they find will go to museums, where people can see them.

**2** Do the quiz. Compare your answers in pairs and say why you chose your answer

### Tools For Life

1 Which of the following do you use to plan activities? How often do you use them? What kind of activities do you use each one for?

a calendar a clock a watch a notebook a diary a mobile phone

2 Do you do your homework ...  
a while you are doing something else?  
b in a quiet room?  
c in a noisy place?

3 If you have lots of things to do, how do you decide what to do first?  
a I do the most important things first.  
b I do the most enjoyable things first.  
c I do the easiest things first.

4 Which one is true for you?  
a I have enough time during the day to do all the things I want to do.  
b I don't have enough time during the day for hobbies and relaxing.  
c I have too much free time during the day and I get bored.



**3** Discuss your answers to the questions in exercise 2 and these questions

- 1 Why is it important to plan your time?
- 2 Can you suggest ways for your partner to use their time better?

Workbook page 3

## Language Functions

### Asking and answering about time and duration

**How long .....? (كم المدة (تسأل عن المدة) since/ for**

☒ How long have you been teaching?

➤ I've been teaching for ten years/since 2010

**When .....? متى (تسأل عن الزمن) yesterday/ago/ last/ next....**

☒ When did you start working here?

➤ I started working here 6 years ago.

**How often.....? (كم مرة (تسأل عن عدد المرات)**

every(day - week - month.....)

(Once/twice/three times) + a + (day - week - month - year)

☒ How often do patients come and see you?

➤ They come and see me every six months.

➤ They came and see me twice a year.

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**Sayed :** (1)..... did you first want to be a dentist?

**Dentist:** I first wanted to be a dentist ten years (2)..... , when I was at school.

**Sayed :** (3) ..... have you been working at this clinic?

**Dentist:** I have been working here for about two years.

**Sayed :** how (4) ..... do patients come and see you?

**Dentist:** I examine them every six months.

**Complete the following dialogue:****Alaa and ahmed are taking about English**

**Alaa :** How long have you been learning English?

**Ahmed:** I've (1).....it four about seven year

**Alaa :** When (2)..... you start learning it?

**Ahmed:** (3) .....I was six.

**Alaa :** How (4)..... do you have lessons?

**Ahmed:** we have them every day

**Complete the following dialogue:****Tarek, Rami and Hassan are talking about chess.**

**Tarek :** How long have you and Rami been playing that game of chess?

**Hassan :** We've been playing it (1) ..... nearly an hour.

**Tarek :** I've (2) ..... watching you. How long does it take to learn to play chess?

**Rami :** (3) ..... been playing it for two years, but I'm not very good at it

**Hassan :** It doesn't take long to learn the rules, but you (4) ..... play every week if you want to be good at it.

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) **Ahmed:** .....

**Heba :** A chemist works in a laboratory or chemist's

2) **Ali :** How often do you visit the school library, ahmed?

**Ahmed:** .....

3) **Aya :** .....

**Mrs Noha:** I've been working at this school for two years.

4) **Amal :** .....

**Heba :** I finished studying at university last year.

5) **Dentist :** .....

**Hady :** my tooth hurts.

6) **Ahmed:** When did you start learning English?

**Amany:** .....

7) **Tarek :** .....

**Karim :** I play sports every day.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- A/An ..... helps to find new medicines.

- a) former                      b) architect                      c) archaeologist                      d) chemist

2- We use a ..... to know the days, weeks and months of the year.

- a) calendar                      b) clock                      c) notebook                      d) diary

3- Dr Zaki is a great ..... He works at ancient sites.

- a) teacher                      b) nurse                      c) chemist                      d) archaeologist

4- An archaeologist looks for pots and ..... from the past.

- a) coins                      b) diaries                      c) watches                      d) mobile phones

5- My brother is a/an..... He's been testing some new medicine.

- a) engineer                      b) chemist                      c) dentist                      d) artist

6- Scientists do their science experiments in.....

- a) libraries                      b) laboratories                      c) companies                      d) factories

7- Ahmed is a good..... of English.

- a) speaker                      b) player                      c) footballer                      d) artist

8- I'm going to have a/an..... I am going to work in a big company.

- a) interview                      b) calendar                      c) conference                      d) toothache

9- If you are ill, the doctor will .....you.

- a) examine                      b) operation                      c) checks                      d) give

10- Ten ..... are waiting to see the doctor.

- a) operations                      b) stations                      c) ambulances                      d) patients

11- If you see an accident, dial 123 for an.....

- a) hour                      b) operation                      c) ambulance                      d) patients

12- What have you been doing..... the last 20 minutes?

- a) for                      b) since                      c) already                      d) just

13- I'm sure Hanan will do ..... in her test

- a) good                      b) will                      c) well                      d) best

14- My younger brother writes what he does every day in his.....

- a) mobile                      b) calendar                      c) dairy                      d) diary

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- my brother did an operation two hours ago. (.....)
- 2- A farmer works at ancient sites. (.....)
- 3- An engineer tells us about ancient sites. (.....)
- 4- Look at the diary and tell me about the date today. (.....)
- 5- The farmer examined my teeth and gave me some medicine. (.....)
- 6- My sister spends much time talking in the phone. (.....)
- 7- The doctor examines his patients in the class. (.....)
- 8- He had been playing football all day. (.....)
- 9- The surgeon جراح is able to make many operations. (.....)
- 10- I have been working since a long time. (.....)
- 11- The chemist designs buildings. (.....)
- 12- The lorry carries ill people to the hospitals. (.....)
- 13- The telephone health clinic plays an important part in health. (.....)
- 14- For 2014, Egypt has been trying to advance. (.....)
- 15- Patients make operations when they are very ill. (.....)
- 16- Doctors make operations when the patients are very ill. (.....)
- 17- I came here a year age. (.....)
- 18- I have been talking for the patients. (.....)
- 19- I make the most enjoyable things first. (.....)
- 20- When did you start come to this school? (.....)



## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

advice	نصيحة	vocabulary	كلمات-مفردات
improve	يُحسّن	enough	كافٍ
brain	مخ	the best results	أفضل النتائج
stick	يلصق/عصا	diagrams	رسوم توضيحية
memory	ذاكرة	able to	قادر على
memorise	يحفظ عن ظهر قلب	ways	طرق
achieve	يحقق	information	معلومات
achievement	إنجاز	photos	صور
rhymes	قوافي	bee	نحلة
instead	بدلا من ذلك	invent	يخترع
results	نتائج	at all	مطلقا
remember	يتذكر	finally	في النهاية
remind	يُذكّر	noisy	صاخب
revise	يراجع	quiet place	مكان هادئ
revision	مراجعة	clearly	بوضوح
timetable	جدول مواعيد	relax	يستريح
a ten-minute break	راحة لمدة عشر دقائق	sentence	جملة
nervous ≠ relaxed	متوتر/متعصب ≠ مسترخي	picture	صورة
revise	يراجع	things	أشياء
useful ≠ useless	مفيد ≠ غير مفيد	exercise	بتدرب
exams	امتحانات	walking	المشي
subject	مادة	such as	مثل
always	دائما	interesting	شيق
healthy	صحي	possible ≠ impossible	ممكّن ≠ مستحيل
clearly	بوضوح	recycling	إعادة تصنيع
during revision	أثناء المراجعة	too late	متأخر جدا
hungry	جوعان	won't	سوف لن
too many	كثير جدًا (أكثر من اللازم)	fruit	فاكهة
sweets	حلويات	important	هام
choose	يختار	walls	حوائط
nuts	بندق-سوداني	polite ≠ impolite	مهذب ≠ غير مهذب
facts	حقائق	think of/about	يفكر في
revision timetable	جدول مراجعة	exam results	نتائج الإمتحان

## Confusing Words

except ما عدا	advice نصيحة	invent يخترع	remember يتذكر	interesting شيق
expect يتوقع	advise ينصح	invite يدعو	remind يُذكر شخص	interested مهتم

## Prepositions & Expressions

do well in exams يؤدي جيدًا في الإمتحانات	take a ten-minute break يأخذ استراحة
feel nervous يشعر بتوتر	make timetable يعد جدول للمراجعة
get nervous يصبح متوترا/ عصبى	make diagrams يعد رسوم
invent rhymes يؤلف قافية	make a list يعد قائمة
revise for (exams) يراجع للإمتحان	make questions يكون أسئلة
good for bad for مفيد ل ضار ل	stay up too late يسهر لوقت متأخر
improve your memory يحسن الذاكرة	get enough sleep يحصل على نوم كاف
stick it on the walls يلصقها على الحائط	do exercise/ sport يتدرب / يؤدي رياضة
make....interesting يجعل شئ شيق	do homework يعمل الواجب
get enough sleep يحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم	do an exam يحل امتحان
stay up late يسهر لوقت متأخر	write on a piece of paper يكتب على ورقة
be able to يكون قادرا على	try not to حاول ألا
belong (ed) to يخص / ينتمي الي	give yourself time for أمنح نفسك وقت ل

## Opposites

nervous متوتر/متعصب	relaxed مسترخي	polite مهذب	impolite غير مهذب
useful مفيد	useless غير مفيد	possible ممكن	impossible مستحيل
safe آمن	unsafe غير آمن	interesting شيق	boring ممل
remember يتذكر	forget ينسى	patient صبور	impatient غير صبور

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

feel يشعر	felt	felt	write يكتب	wrote	written
stand يقف	stood	stood	speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
drink يشرب	drank	drank	take يأخذ	took	taken
stick يلصق	stuck	stuck	eat يأكل	ate	eaten

## Language Notes

**feel/get+ صفة / يشعر/يصبح**

- ⇒ Try not to get too nervous before an exam.
- ⇒ I always feel nervous before exams. It's a bad habit.

**Make + مصدر / صفة + مفعول / يجعل**

- ⇒ Think of ways to make your revision interesting
- ⇒ Eating too much makes me feel ill.

**Instead of + (v ing) / اسم / بدلاً من**

- ⇒ I bought sandals instead of slippers

**Instead (تأتي في نهاية الجملة) بدلاً من ذلك**

- ⇒ You shouldn't eat too many sweets. Choose nuts or fruit instead.

**advice نصيحة " اسم لا يعد " تعامل معاملة المفرد وليس لها جمع**

- ⇒ He gave me some useful advice.

**It's إنه من ..... أن مصدر + to صفة**

- ⇒ It is better to relax before you do an exam.

## Reading Time

### How to achieve the best exam results ?

**Here is some useful advice to help you revise for your exams in any subject.**

- ★ You should always eat healthy food because it is good for the brain. What should you eat if you are hungry? You shouldn't eat too many sweets. Choose nuts or fruit instead; they can improve your memory. You should also drink a lot of water.
- ★ You should take a ten-minute break and do some exercise, such as walking every hour, because this improves your memory.
- ★ You shouldn't stay up too late at night. If you don't get enough sleep, you won't be able to remember all the facts that you've memorised.
- ★ Think of ways to make your revision interesting. If you're learning vocabulary, write the words on paper and stick it on the walls. Make lists and diagrams with important information and invent rhymes to help you remember them.
- ★ Finally, try not to get too nervous before an exam. You'll think more clearly if you relax!

**Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة****should and shouldn't for advice**

**فاعل + should + مصدر**  
**shouldn't**

**should** **يجب ان (للتحدث عن اشياء من الجيد ان نفعلها)**

- ⇒ You should take a ten-minute break during revision .
- ⇒ You should always eat healthy food.
- ⇒ You should drink a lot of water.
- ⇒ You should have about eight hours of sleep every night
- ⇒ Students should always be polite.
- ⇒ You should always make a revision timetable.
- ⇒ You should study early in the morning if possible.
- ⇒ You should work in a quiet place.
- ⇒ On a bus, you should give your seat to a person who needs it.
- ⇒ You should pack your school bag before you go to bed at night.
- ⇒ When children speak to adults, they should say Mr, Mrs, Miss.

**Shouldn't** **لا يجب ان (للتحدث عن اشياء ليس من الجيد ان نفعلها)**

- ⇒ You shouldn't watch television all day because it's not healthy.
- ⇒ He shouldn't speak Arabic in an English class.
- ⇒ You shouldn't stay up too late at night.
- ⇒ You shouldn't watch television all day because it's not healthy.
- ⇒ You shouldn't go to bed too late.
- ⇒ You shouldn't study while you are in bed.
- ⇒ You shouldn't stay in the sun too long without a sunhat.
- ⇒ Water is very important. We shouldn't waste it.

**يتم تكوين السؤال بهل كما يلي :**

**Should + subject+verb +.....?**

⇒ Should I write my name on my paper?

Yes, you should.

No, you shouldn't.

**عند السؤال بأداة استفهام**

**Question word+ Should +sub +verb +.....? .**

- ⇒ When should I start to revise for the exam?.
- ⇒ What should Ali do to learn English?
- ⇒ What should you eat if you are hungry?

**Complete the following dialogue:**

Ahmed is asking Ali to give him some advice for exams.

**Ahmed :** What should I do to achieve the best exam results ?

**Ali :** You should eat (1)..... food and drink a lot of water.

**Ahmed :** (2)..... ?

**Ali :** Because it's (3)..... for health.

**Ahmed :** OK. What else should I do ?

**Ali :** You should (4)..... some exercise. This improves your memory.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- You should..... healthy food.

- a) eat                      b) ate                      c) eating                      d) to eat

2- ..... a ten-minute break ? - Of course.

- a) Should take      b) Should I take      c) I should take      d) I take

3- G3 You should always..... to the teacher in the classroom.

- a) listens                      b) listen                      c) listened                      d) listening

4- If you feel ill, you..... do sports till you get better.

- a) should                      b) shouldn't                      c) would                      d) could

5- To be fit, you should..... every day.

- a) exercise                      b) exercises                      c) exercising                      d) to exercise

6- ..... should you do after coming back home ?

- a) When                      b) What                      c) Where                      d) How

7- Ali's grandfather had a successful job and .....many things in his life.

- a) achieved                      b) belonged                      c) stood                      d) told

8- Hala has .....all her friends' phone numbers. She knows them all!

- a) invited                      b) reminded                      c) revised                      d) memorised

9- I used to feel very..... before I saw the dentist. I didn't like it at all!

- a) safe                      b) traditional                      c) nervous                      d) patient

10- Before your exams, it is important to give yourself lots of time for.....

- a) revision                      b) invention                      c) recycling                      d) achievement

11- "1, 2, 3, it's a bee!" is a children's.....

- a) recipe                      b) memory                      c) result                      d) rhyme

12- Reem's father used to..... his photos in a big book.

- a) stick                      b) stretch                      c) achieve                      d) email

13- Teachers usually have a very goo..... . They know all the students' names!

- a) memorise                      b) memory                      c) remember                      d) revision

14- You should eat nuts and fruits to improve your .....

- a) remind                      b) remember                      c) member                      d) memory

15- You..... always make a revision timetable.

- a) can't                      b) mustn't                      c) should                      d) shouldn't

- 16- You..... study early in the morning if possible.  
 a) can't                      b) mustn't                      c) should                      d) shouldn't
- 17- You..... go to bed too late.  
 a) can                      b) must                      c) should                      d) shouldn't
- 18- You..... work in a quiet place.  
 a) should                      b) mustn't                      c) shouldn't                      d) can't
- 19- You..... study while you are in bed.  
 a) shouldn't                      b) must                      c) should                      d) can
- 20- On a bus, you ..... give your seat to a person who needs it.  
 a) should                      b) mustn't                      c) shouldn't                      d) can't
- 21- You .....stay in the sun too long without a sunhat.  
 a) can                      b) must                      c) should                      d) shouldn't
- 22- How much sleep .....children have each night?  
 a) does                      b) should                      c) shouldn't                      d) can't
- 23- Does the word "shoe" .....with "you"?  
 a) stick                      b) revise                      c) rhyme                      d) belong
- 24- You should ..... a few months before an exam.  
 a) achieve                      b) memorize                      c) revise                      d) do

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- When should I sleeping ? (.....)
- 2- He shouldn't study for the exam. (.....)
- 3- You shouldn't ate many sweets. (.....)
- 4- Could I sleep early ? Yes, you should. (.....)
- 5- You shouldn't pack your school bag before you go to bed at night. (.....)
- 6- Water is very important. We should waste it. (.....)
- 7- You shouldn't to eat too many sweets. (.....)
- 8- How much revise have you done this week? (.....)
- 9- what can I do to introduce the best results? (.....)
- 10- Eating nuts prove your memory. (.....)

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&amp;4

improve	يُحسن	map	خريطة
race	سباق	think	يفكر - يعتقد
check	يفحص	finish	ينهى
label	ملصق/ بطاقة/ يُصنف	follow	يتبع
spelling mistakes	أخطاء هجائية	recipe	وصفة
excellent	ممتاز	understand	يفهم
congratulate	يهنيئ	really	حقاً - فعلاً
congratulations	مبروك	pass	يمر/يجتاز
winner loser	فائز خاسر	important	هام
achievement	إنجاز	wrongly ≠ correctly	بشكل صحيح ≠ خاطئ
degree	درجة علمية	of course	بالطبع
poster	درجة علمية	colours	ألوان
review	مراجعة	dialogue	حوار - محادثة
so that	لكي/لذلك	advice	نصيحة
geography	جغرافيا	explain	يشرح
holidays	اجازات	planets	كواكب
sentences	جُمَل	Mercury	عطارد
copybook	كراسة نسخ	Jupiter	كوكب المشتري
adults	كبار - بالغين	Venus	كوكب الزهرة
the same	نفس الشيء	Uranus	كوكب أورانوس
relax	يسترخي	Earth	كوكب الأرض
look	يبدو/ينظر	delicious	لذيذ

## Confusing Words

break	فسحة/يكسر	prize	جائزة	bored	يشعر بالملل	seat	مقعد ثابت
brake	مكابح-فرامل	price	سعر	boring	ممل	chair	كرسي يمكن نقله

## Prepositions &amp; Expressions

make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	The best way to	أفضل طريقة لـ
make a poster	يقوم بعمل ملصق	get bored	يشعر بالملل
make a cake	يعمل كيكاً	in just two minutes	خلال دقيقتين فقط
do revision	يقوم بعمل مراجعة	that looks delicious	هذا يبدو لذيذاً
draw/make a picture	يرسم صورة	do an hour of one subject	يذاكر مادة لمدة ساعة

in the holidays	في الأجازات	in that way	بهذه الطريقة
have a degree	لديه درجة علمية	take turns	يأخذ دور
follow a recipe	يتبع وصفة	learn(how) to	يتعلم كيف
follow the advice	يتبع نصيحة	That's really good.	انه حقا رائع
labe ..... with	يضع ملصق للتصنيف	Well done!	أحسنت

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

write يكتب	wrote	written	swim يسبح	swam	swum
spell يتهجى	spelt	spelt	win يفوز	won	won
spell يتهجى	spelled	spelled	draw يرسم	drew	drawn

## Language Notes

**start to + المصدر /start + المصدر + ing/Noun يبدأ**

- ⇒ I started to do homework.
- ⇒ When did you start doing this job?
- ⇒ When did you start this job?

**It's + صفة + to + مصدر انه ..... أن**

- ⇒ It's important to plan your time.
- ⇒ It's unhealthy to eat too many sweets.

## Tapescript



### Narrator one

**Mum :** That's really good, Heba! I like the way you 've used the colours.

**Dad :** You should stick it on the wall so that we can look at it every time we come in the room.

**Heba:** That's a good idea!

### Narrator Two

**Man:** The winner of the first prize is Selim Hamdi! Well done, Selim. You were really fast today. You finished in just two minutes! That's a great achievement.

### Narrator Three

**Miss Rawia:** Well done, Mazin. I really liked your story.

**Mazin :** Thank you, Miss Rawia.

**Miss Rawia:** You used some very good sentences. You also only made two spelling mistakes. Well done!

**Mazin :** Should I write the words I spelt wrongly in my copybook, Miss Rawia?

**Miss Rawia:** Yes, it's always a good idea to do that. That way you won't make the same mistakes again.

### Narrator four

**Dad :** Congratulations, Mariam ! Now you have a degree!

**Mum:** You should relax and enjoy your summer holiday, before you start your first job!

### Narrator five

**Mum:** That looks delicious! Did you make it yourself ?

**Girl :** Yes, I did! Well, I followed a recipe, of course.

**Mum:** Well, you're an excellent cook, Dina!

**Voice :** Everyone can learn to study. If you follow this advice, you'll remember things better and achieve better results. You should start revising a few months before the exam. You shouldn't start the night before an exam! You should plan your study time so that you don't have to do a lot of revision just before the exam. Many students find it helpful to study more than one subject at a time. Do an hour of one subject, then take a break and start something different. That way, you won't get bored. You should talk about what you have learned with a friend. It can help you remember things. You can also test each other and explain things to each other when one of you doesn't understand.

## Language Functions

### Congratulating people تهنئة الناس

- **That/It was really good.** لقد كان جيدا حقا
- **Well done!** احسنت
- **It's / That's a great achievement!** انه انجاز رائع
- **Congratulations !** تهانينا
- **You're an excellent (cook).** انك ممتاز

**Suffixes (ment or -(s)ion)**

غالباً نضيف النهايات s/ion - ment للفعل لكي نحصل على الاسم

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
enjoy يستمتع	<b>Enjoyment</b> استمتاع	congratulate يهنئ	<b>congratulations</b> تهاني
achieve يحقق	<b>Achievement</b> انجاز	revise يراجع	<b>revision</b> مراجعة
evaporate يتبخر	<b>evaporation</b> تبخر	decide يقرر	<b>decision</b> قرار

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**Miss Rawia is congratulating Mazin on his achievement.**

**Miss Rawia :** Well (1)....., Mazin. I really liked your story.

**Mazin :** Thank you, Miss Rawia.

**Miss Rawia :** You used some very good sentences. You also only (2)..... two spelling mistakes. Well done!

**Mazin :** Should I (3) .....the words I spelt wrongly in my copybook?

**Miss Rawia :** Yes, it's a good idea. That way you won't make the same (4)..... again.

**Mazin :** Thank you so much, Miss Rawia.

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues**

**1) Lamia :** I learned to make clothes on holidays.

**Mohamed :** .....! How long did it take ?

**Lamia :** Only a month.

**2)Magdi :** .....

**Mona :** Yes, I made it myself. Is it good ?

**Magdi :** Of course. You're an excellent cook.

**3) Tamer :** I've succeeded in the final exam.

**Nader :** .....

**Tamer :** Thanks a lot.

**4) Maha:** .....

**Nabila :** I used flour and butter to make that cake.

**Maha :** That's really good.

**5) Noha:** Well done, Hassan. I really liked your story .

**Hassan:** .....

**6) Sara :** .....

**Abdou:** That's a great achievement.

**7) Ahmed:** My father climbed Egypt's highest mountain last week!

**Ramez:** .....

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- You can make a ..... about the best way to revise English.  
a) test                      b) pest                      c) poster                      d) cost
- 2- I ..... Ali on getting high marks.  
a) congratulated      b) helped                      c) told                      d) labelled
- 3- I got a ..... for winning the 100-metre race.  
a) diagram                      b) map                      c) prize                      d) price
- 4- After drawing diagrams, you can ..... them with important words.  
a) spell                      b) label                      c) hit                      d) tell
- 5- In the geography exam, I checked the places on the .....  
a) map                      b) mop                      c) race                      d) channel
- 6- ..... ! You achieved the best results in the class.  
a) How bad                      b) Congratulations      c) Sorry                      d) Unluckily
- 7- When children speak to adults, they..... say Mr, Mrs or Miss and their name.  
a) should                      b) shouldn't                      c) mustn't                      d) can't
- 8- Water is very important. We ..... waste it.  
a) should                      b) have to                      c) shouldn't                      d) had to
- 9- You should..... able to write the words correctly.  
a) being                      b) be                      c) to be                      d) to being
- 10- How ..... revision have you done this week ?  
a) many                      b) much                      c) long                      d) often
- 11- You shouldn't stay in the sun too long. This is a good .....  
a) ability                      b) necessity                      c) advice                      d) law
- 12- ..... students can't get good results.  
a) Nervous                      b) Happy                      c) Calm                      d) Free
- 13- The ..... is inside your head.  
a) nose                      b) hair                      c) brain                      d) leg
- 14- You can invent..... to help you remember important facts.  
a) telephones                      b) rhymes                      c) machines                      d) seats
- 15- Ahmed has a test next week. He ..... to revise.  
a) should start                      b) should                      c) shouldn't                      d) can
- 16- Mona..... learning English since she was five.  
a) is                      b) have                      c) have been                      d) has been
- 17- ..... the farmer been working in the fields all day?  
a) Was                      b) Have                      c) Has                      d) How
- 18- Write a..... of the things we need to buy at the shops.  
a) list                      b) label                      c) diagram                      d) diary
- 19- You should eat nuts and fruits to improve your. ..  
a) remind                      b) remember                      c) member                      d) memory
- 20- A/An ..... .. often works at ancient sites.

- a) ambulance    b) archaeologist    c) farmer    d) teacher
- 21- Does the word "shoe"..... with "you"?
- a) stick    b) revise    c) rhyme    d) belong
- 22- The doctor has..... to the patient all morning.
- a) been talking    b) talking    c) talk    d) talks
- 23- How much sleep..... children have each night?
- a) does    b) should    c) shouldn't    d) can't
- 24- Manal broke her leg, so they took her to hospital in an .....
- a) ambulance    b) accident    c) album    d) envelope
- 25- Teachers usually have a .....good . They know all the students' names!
- a) memorise    b) memory    c) remember    d) revision
- 26- The house has a pretty red..... on the floor of the dining room.
- a) ladder    b) weave    c) centre    d) carpet
- 27- The children wrote their names on.....which they put on their school books.
- a) stamps    b) labels    c) posters    d) vans

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- You should take a ten-minutes break during study. (.....)
- 2- Before travelling, you have to back your bags. (.....)
- 3- What does Judy's father advice her to do ? (.....)
- 4- You should getting up early. (.....)
- 5- It been raining all day, so we cannot play outside. (.....)
- 6- The doctor told me to take some medical because I was sick. (.....)
- 7- You shouldn't to eat too many sweets. (.....)
- 8- I write what I do every day in a clock. (.....)
- 9- The doctor revised the patient's chest. (.....)
- 10- What you been doing this morning. (.....)
- 11- My father is a farmer. He works in a laboratory. (.....)
- 12- They should listen to English at the radio. (.....)
- 13- I thank that their English is better already! (.....)
- 14- I've been collected pictures. (.....)

Unit  
12

## Hobbies and crafts

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

hobbies	هوايات	out side ≠ inside	خارج ≠ داخل
crafts	حرف	float	يطفو
Join ed	يلتحق/ينضم لـ	computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر
sewing machine	ماكينة خياطة	trip	رحلة قصيرة
play online	يلعب على الانترنت	one day	ذات يوم
tourist leaflet	منشور سياحي	school magazine	مجلة مدرسية
model plane	نموذج لطائرة	still	ما زال
chess	شطرنج	notes	ملاحظات
online	عبر الانترنت/متصل بالانترنت	family party	حفل عائلي
stamps	طوابع	soon	قريبا
club	نادي	countable	اسم معدود
tourist websites	مواقع اليكتروني سياحية	uncountable	اسم غير معدود
online club	نادي على الانترنت	blanket	بطانية
email ed	يرسل رسالة	probably	من المحتمل
website	موقع إلكتروني	around	حول
cotton	قطن	both	كلا من
picnic	نزهة خلوية	while	بينما - أثناء
carefully	بحرص	discuss ed	يناقش
ages	أعوام	windy	عاصف
exciting	مثير	sail across	يبحر عبر
favourite	مفضل	travellers	رحالة

## Hobbies

make models	يصنع نماذج	sew clothes	يخيط ملابس
make clothes	يصنع ملابس	take photos	يلتقط صور
collect stamps	يجمع طوابع		

## Places and Countries

Brazil	البرازيل	India	الهند	The Nile	نهر النيل
North Africa	شمال أفريقيا	Mount Sinai	جبل سيناء	The Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري
Iran	إيران	Lake Nasser	بحيرة ناصر		

## Confusing Words

chess	شطرنج	sew	يخيط	boat	قارب	think	يفكر	great	عظيم
cheese	جبنة	saw	رأى/منشار	boots	حذاء برقبة	sink	يغوص	greet	يُحيي

## Prepositions & Expressions

popular with	مشهور لدي/محبوب لدي	have a hobby	لديه هواية
take photos	يلتقط صور	in about 500ce	في حوالي 500 بعد الميلاد
on a tourist leaflet	في منشور سياحي	decide to + inf.	يقرر ان
go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	decide to	يقرر أن
(be) made of	مصنوع من	children of my age	الاطفال في نفس عمري
do/practise a hobby	يمارس هواية	all over the world	في جميع انحاء العالم
for all ages	لكل الاعمار	across the river	عبر النهر

## Opposites

carefully	بحرص	carelessly	باهمال	exciting	شيق/مثير	unexciting/boring	ممل
known	معروف	unknown	غير معروف	out side	خارج	inside	داخل

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

feel	يشعر	felt	felt	teach	يعلم	taught	taught
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewn	wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
know	يعرف	knew	known	write	يكتب	wrote	written
think	يفكر/يعتقد	thought	thought	find	يجد	found	found
buy	يشترى	bought	bought	Make	يصنع	made	made

## Language Notes

**have to + مصدر: يجب عليه أن**

✓ You have to think very carefully.

**start + v + ing يبدأ**

✓ I started taking photos last year.

**decide to يقرر أن**

✓ I decided to study hard.

**Teach+ معلم + how to/ مصدر + أن... يعلم ... أن... مصدر**

✓ My grandfather taught me how to / to play chess.

# Language Notes

## READ THE WEBSITES ABOUT HOBBIES

My hobby is playing chess. To me, it's more exciting than a computer game because you have to think very carefully while you are playing. My grandfather taught me to play the game. Chess is a great game for all ages. I still play with my grandfather and he's 65! I also play online. I joined an online club for children of my age, so now I play with people from all over the world.

### Habiba, 14

I started taking photos when we went on a school trip to Lake Nasser about a year ago. The teachers liked one of my photos of the lake and put it in the school magazine. Then I decided to email some of my photos to tourist websites. Now, a photo that I took of the Nile is on a tourist leaflet! My favourite photo is of my family. I took it when we were at a family party. I always feel happy when I look at that photo.

### Adam, 15.

## Choose the correct answer: WB

Chess is an ancient game. The first game of chess was probably played in India in around 500 CE. hundred years later, it was popular with the King of Iran. The game was soon played in North Africa. In around 1000 CE, travellers took chess around the world. By 1400 CE, people began to write the rules for the famous game which we know today.

## أدوات النكرة و المعرفة Indefinite article, definite article and no article

### a/an/the

← تستخدم أداة النكرة (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف ساكن

a boy – a girl – a man – a woman – a hand – a lamp - a car

← قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف متحرك وينطق ساكن

a uniform / a university / a unit / a European team / a one way street /... etc

← an تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف متحرك (a-e-i-o-u)

an apple – an egg – an inkpot – an orange – an elephant.

← قبل الاسم المفرد المبدوء بحرف ساكن لا ينطق المتبوعة بحرف متحرك

an hour – an honest man

**استخدامات a/an**

← نستخدم أدوات النكرة a/ an قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود عندما :

Have you ever had an operation?

(1) نتحدث عن شيء لأول مرة

I've got a new camera.

(2) وقبل الصفة و الاسم

He is an engineer. /He is a pilot.

(3) وقبل الوظائف

← نستخدم a/ an مع بعض التعابير

once a week

twice a day.

50 km an hour.

← لا نستخدم أدوات النكرة a/ an قبل الاسم غير المعدود أو الجمع.

Fish is my favourite food.

I'm wearing black shoes.

**استخدامات ( the ) :**

-1 عند التحدث عن شيء سبق ذكره من قبل أو عند التحدث عن شيء محدد.

✓ The fish which we had for dinner last night was delicious.

✓ I'm wearing the black shoes I bought yesterday.

✓ While walking, I met a boy. The boy is my friend.

-2 عندما يكون الشيء الذي نتحدث عنه فريد من نوعه واحد فقط ( في العالم أو في مكان ما )

the earth

the Nile

the sun

the school magazine.

-3 قبل الاسم الذي تتبعه جملة وصفية ( بها ضمير وصل )

✓ The fish which we had for dinner last night was delicious.

-4 قبل المحيطات / البحار / الأنهار / القنوات.

the Nile- the Red Sea - the Suez Canal - the Mediterranean Sea -The Atlantic Ocean.

-5 عند المقارنة بين واحد و مجموعة (التفضيل).

the tallest

the biggest

the most expensive

-6 مع الاختراعات والألات الموسيقية وفترات اليوم

the computer

the internet

the piano

in the morning

-7 مع الدول التي تتكون من أكثر من كلمة

The USA (the United states of America )

the UK

the (United Kingdom)

**لا نستخدم the :**

-1 لا نستخدم the ( ال ) قبل أسماء الأشخاص / البحيرات / الجبال

Ahmed

Lake Nasser

Mount Sinai

-2 لا نستخدم the ( ال ) قبل أسماء / البلاد / المدن / القارات

Egypt

Cairo

Africa

-3 لا نستخدم the ( ال ) قبل المواد الدراسية / الرياضات / الهوايات / المواد الخام.

English

football

reading

cotton.

**Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences: WB:**

1. Do you like playing **the computer** games? ( ..... )
2. My uncle has a house that is near **Nile**. ( ..... )
3. Mona's favourite place is **Egyptian** Museum. ( ..... )
4. Cairo is **a** biggest city in Egypt. ( ..... )
5. Scientists have found a new animal that lives in **the Brazil**. ( ..... )
- 6- My uncle's house is by **a** Nile. ( ..... )
- 7- My grandfather taught me **play** the game. ( ..... )
- 8- We went on a school trip to **the** Lake Nasser. ( ..... )
- 9- We went on a school **tribe** fast week. ( ..... )
- 10- It was a very **excited** film. I want to watch it again. ( ..... )
- 11- I'd like to make some **medal** houses. ( ..... )
12. **A** car he bought was very expensive. ( ..... )
13. Yesterday was **the** windy day, so I didn't go out. ( ..... )
14. I bought **a** umbrella yesterday. ( ..... )
- 15- Cairo is **a** biggest city in Egypt. ( ..... )

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- Chess is ..... ancient game.  
 a) a                      b) the                      c) an                      d) no article
- 2- I started collecting ..... coins when I was seven.  
 a) the                      b) a                      c) no article                      d) an
- 3- Jacky Chan is from ..... Korea.  
 a) no article                      b) an                      c) the                      d) a
- 4- We were having ..... picnic by the Nile.  
 a) no article                      b) an                      c) the                      d) a
- 5- I like collecting ..... from all countries.  
 a) clothes                      b) stamps                      c) chess                      d) hobbies
- 6- A: What's your favourite ..... ?                      B: Collecting stamps.  
 a) hobby                      b) subject                      c) object                      d) sport
- 7- My brother.....a club to practise many sports.  
 a) got                      b) had                      c) went                      d) joined
- 8- My sister.....clothes very well.  
 a) sews                      b) sees                      c) does                      d) works
- 9- You can play games.....  
 a) line on                      b) online                      c) outlook                      d) look out
- 10- All the photos I took last holiday were put in a tourist.....  
 a) guide                      b) journey                      c) leaflet                      d) trip

- 11- My cousin's favourite hobby is making..... planes and boats.  
a) photo      b) stamp      c) model      d) craft
- 12- Lamia beat Mohammed in a..... game.  
a) chess      b) cheese      c) shoes      d) check
- 13- She never had ,..... accident.  
a) a      b)an      c)the      d) no article
- 14- He's wearing,..... black shoes.  
a) a      b) an      c) the      d) no article
- 15- ..... meat we ate yesterday was very delicious.  
a) A      b)An      c)The      d) No article
- 16- I'd like to see ..... Mount of Sinai one day.  
a) a      b)an      c)the      d) no article
- 17- Our boat sailed across ..... river.  
a)a      )an      c)the      d) no article
- 18- She uses her new sewing machine to make..... clothes.  
a) a      b) an      c) the      d) no article
- 19- I watched ..... exciting film on TV yesterday.  
a) a      b) an      c) the      d) no article
- 20- He's got ..... new mobile phone.  
a) a      b) an      c) the      d) no article
- 21- The game of chess was ..... with the King of Iran.  
a) pleased      b) filled      c) angry      d) popular
- 22- In around 1000 CE, ..... took chess around the world.  
a) babies      b) travellers      c) workers      d) teachers
- 23- A: What's your favourite hobby? B: Collecting .....  
a) paper      b) magazines      c) stamps      d) rubbish
- 24- This jacket is ..... of cotton.  
a) built      b) made      c) done      d) cooked
- 25- I enjoy making ..... model planes and boats.  
a) a      b) no article      c) an      d) the
- 26- I live in ..... Cairo.  
b) on      b) a      c) no article      d) the
- 27- I like ..... maths. It is my favourite subject.  
a) the      b) a      c) no article      d) an
- 28- ..... sun is bigger than the earth.  
b) A      b) The      c) An      d) No article

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&amp;4

stamp album	ألبوم طوابع	although	بالرغم من
tapestries	مفروشات مزخرفة	because	لأن
group	مجموعة/يصنف	so	لذلك
envelope	مظروف خطاب	contrast	تناقض
weaving	حياكة-نسيج	the right place	المكان الصحيح
traditional	تقليدى	cousin	ابن العم
dye	صبغة	different	مختلف
weaver	نساج	any thing	أى شئ
carpet	سجادة	choose	يختار
natural	طبيعى	get off	ينزل-يهبط
craft	حرفة	art	فن - رسم
produce	ينتج	fossils	حفريات
wool	صوف	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
designs	تصميمات	Hand craft	حرفة يدوية
finally	أخيرا	paint-ed	يدهن-يلون
hand-made	صناعة يدوية	streets	شوارع
noisy	صاخب	corner	ركن
important	هام	wait for	ينتظر
label	بطاقة	step	خطوة
material	مادة	pull	يسحب-يشد
by hand	باليدي	wind	رياح
cut off	يقطع	Art centre	مركز فنون

## Confusing Words

wool	صوف	weave	ينسج	letter	حرف/خطاب	die	يموت
wall	حائط	wave	موجة	litter	قمامة	dye	صبغة

## Prepositions &amp; Expressions

around the world	حول العالم	by hand	يدويا
at that time	في ذلك الوقت	On the floor	علي الارضية
in the 1950s	في الخمسينيات	put - down	يضع الشئ علي الارض
The first thing you have to do is	اول شئ يجب ان تقوم به هو	take the stamps off the paper	يفصل الطابع عن الورق
wait for	ينتظر	I see	فهمت

cut.....off	يقطع / يفصل	in the right side of...	في الجانب الايمن
group stamps by....	يصنف الطوابع حسب	prefer + v+ing	يفضل
'd/would prefer to	مصدر يفضل أن		

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

sell	يبيع	sold	sold	weave	ينسج	wove	woven
get	يحصل علي	got	got	keep	يحفظ	kept	kept

## Definitions

Craft	حرفة	An activity in which you make something by hand.
Dyes	أصباغ	Things that change the colour of a material.
Weavers	نساجون	People who make carpets or tapestries from wool.
Tapestries	نسيج مطرز	Pictures or designs that are made by weaving.

## Language Notes

**so that ( فعل + فاعل ) لكي**

⇒ I study hard so that I can pass my exams.

**so + صفة + that ( فعل + فاعل ) جدا لدرجة أن**

⇒ The tea was so hot that I could drink it.

**although بالرغم من تستخدم لتبين التناقض**

⇒ I like making my own clothes although sewing takes a long time.

**because لأن تستخدم لتبين السبب**

⇒ I'm not going to school today because it's Friday.

**so لذلك تستخدم لتبين النتيجة**

⇒ It is very hot today, so I'm going to stay at home

### Complete the sentences with although, because or so: WB:

1. We went to the beach on Saturday ..... it was cold and cloudy.
2. Dina went to bed very early last night ..... she was very tired.
3. Miss Heba was ill today, ..... Miss Nadia took our English lesson.
4. Ola loves playing tennis ..... she is not very good at it.
5. Grandfather is ill, ..... I'll call the doctor.
6. There are not many cars in the streets today ..... it is a holiday.

## Tapescript



**Tarek :** I've been collecting stamps for eight years. Eight years ago, my uncle was travelling around the world for his job. He wrote us lots of letters, and I loved looking at the stamps. At that time, I didn't know how many different countries there were in the world ! It's an easy hobby to start. The first thing that you have to do is get some stamps ! I usually find them on letters people write to me, my friends and family, there are also some shops that sell stamps. If you see an interesting stamp on an envelope, first cut the corner of the envelope off very carefully. After that, put the corner of the envelope with the stamp on it in some cold water. After ten minutes, take the stamp off the paper carefully, Some people group their stamps by subject, for example stamps with animals on them or famous people, etc. Some people group them by colour. But I prefer grouping them by country. The next step is deciding where to put the stamps. Look at this stamp. It's one hundred years old and it's from England! Finally , I'm going to put it in my stamp album.

## Definitions

### The WISSA WASSEF ART CENTRE

Egyptian weaving is very famous all over the world. The Wissa Wassef Art Centre is in the village of Harraniyya, near Cairo. It teaches children to design and weave carpets and tapestries.

- A man called Ramses Wissa Wassef started the centre in the 1950s, with his wife Sophie. Ramses wanted people to learn the traditional Egyptian craft of weaving so that they could produce beautiful tapestries.
- The first students were twelve boys and girls. The colours for the wool came from natural dyes. They made these from trees.

There is a museum at the centre where you can see many of the first tapestries that the centre produced. Some of the tapestries are also in museums in other countries.

- Although these first weavers are now grandparents, some of them are still weaving at the centre, with a new group of children.

I like to collect fossils. It is an interesting hobby, although it is not always easy to find them. The first thing you have to do is find the right place. I know a place in the desert where there are many fossils. When I see a fossil, first I look carefully to see if it was a plant or a small animal. After that, I put the fossil in a special bag. Then, I take it home. The next step is deciding where to put the fossil, group fossils of animals and plants and keep them in different boxes. Finally, I find out the name of the animal or plant and write it in my notebook.

### **وصف خطوات عمل شيء ما: Describing a process**

- ❖ How do I ( do - make - paly ....)
- ❖ What do I do first/ next .....
- ❖ What next/ after that?
  - ⇒ **The first thing that you have to do is+ مصدر** (get some stamps)
  - ⇒ **First**, (cut the corner of the envelope off)
  - ⇒ **After that**, (put the corner of the envelope in some cold water)
  - ⇒ **Then** (wait for it to dry)
  - ⇒ **The next step is** (deciding where to **put** the stamps)
  - ⇒ **Finally**, I'm going to (put it in my stamp album)

### **Complete the following dialogue:**

**Mohamed is asking Nour how to fly a kite.**

**Mohamed:** How do we fly this kite, Nur?

**Nour:** The first (1).....you have to do is find a place without too many trees.

**Mohamed:** OK. Here's a good place. What next?

**Nur:** (2)..... after that, put the kite down.

**Mohamed:** I see.

**Nur:** (3) ....., wait for the wind. The next step is to pull the kite into the wind.

**Mohamed:** Look! The kite is (4) ..... !

### **Complete the following dialogue:**

**Maher and Adel are talking about Wissa Wassef.**

**Maher :** What did Ramses Wassef start in the village of Harraniyya ?

**Adel :** Ramses Wassef started the Wissa Wassef Art (1).....

**Maher :** (2)..... did he start it ?

**Adel :** (3) ..... 1950 s, with his wife Sophie. Ramses wanted people to learn the traditional Egyptian craft of weaving.

**Maher :** Would you like to (4)..... the centre ?

**Adel :** Yes, because they could produce beautiful tapestries.

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) **Helmy** : What hobbies do you like doing ?

**Magdi** : .....

2) **Tarek** : .....

**Mohab** : You can group the stamps by subject, by colour or by country.

3) **Sara** : What's your favourite craft?

**Haneen** : .....

4) **Ahmed** : What's the first thing to do to learn English ?

**Mohamed** : To read books in English.

**Ahmed** : .....

**Mohamed** : To listen to radio programmes in English.

5) **Osama**: How do you use this computer, Ali?

**Ali** : .....

6) **Osama** : What's your favourite hobby?

**Youssef** : .....

7) **Aya** : .....

**Mohamed** : I've been working at this school for 15 years.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The ..... made the shirt a beautiful red colour.

- a) photo                      b) dye                      c) pen                      d) pencil

2. A/An ..... is something you keep things in like letters or money,

- a) envelope                      b) fridge                      c) book                      d) kitchen

3. I need to buy some ..... so I can send these letters to my cousins.

- a) leaflets                      b) albums                      c) labels                      d) stamps

4. .... are people who design things like carpets or tapestries.

- a) Waves                      b) Wafers                      c) Weavers                      d) Weavings

5. The Wssa Wassef Art Centre is in the ..... of Harraniyya.

- a) village                      b) sea                      c) country                      d) ocean

6. In many houses, people put ..... on the floors.

- a) albums                      b) carpets                      c) weaving                      d) stamps

7. Do you like ..... games like chess, or new games like computer games ?

- a) noisy                      b) important                      c) traditional                      d) favourite

8. People like to visit the art and craft ..... in Harraniyya.

- a) leaflet                      b) weaver                      c) material                      d) centre

9- ..... story which I read yesterday was very interesting,

- a) A                      b) An                      c) The                      d) No article

10. Have you bought..... new umbrella ?  
 a) a                      b) an                      c) the                      d) no article
- 11- ..... he is old, he practises sports.  
 a) **Although**              b) **Because**              c) **So**                      d) **But**
12. I play basketball at..... school.  
 a) a                      b) an                      c) the                      d) no article
13. My hobby is making .....)) cars)  
 a) **electric**              b) **medal**                      c) **modern**                      d) **model**
14. I need a large ..... for our living room floor.  
 a) **leaflet**              b) **carpet**                      c) **tapestry**                      d) **tapescript**
15. Ahmed likes..... stamps.  
 a) **collecting**              b) **visiting**                      c) **sewing**                      d) **taking**
16. Can you..... your clothes?  
 a) **start**                      b) **sew**                      c) **do**                      d) **like**

**Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- My mum is a great reader. She makes the best hand-made carpets! (.....)
2. In winter, people usually wear clothes made of wood. (.....)
3. Dries change the colour of a material. (.....)
4. Stamps are pictures or designs that are made by weaving. (.....)
5. Pepole put stamps on the floor. (.....)
6. Before sending the letter, put an album on the envelope. (.....)
7. I'd like to make some medal houses. (.....)
8. How can we get a stamp off a envelope? (.....)
9. Hamdi can't decision what to do (.....)

**W.B. Practice test (4a)**

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Why does Khaled want to ask Mr Hamdi questions?  
 a. for his maths homework                      b. because he was absent  
 c. because he wants to be                      d. teacher d for his English homework
2. How long has Mr Hamdi been at the school?  
 a. two years                      b. three years                      c. four years                      d. ten years
3. When did Mr Hamdi start teaching?  
 a. two years ago                      b. ten years ago                      c. he doesn't say                      d. in 1998

**2) Listen and answer the following questions:**

1. What has the boy been doing for a month?  
 .....

2. Why does he want to become faster?  
 .....

### 3. What should he do?

.....

### 3) Complete the following dialogue:

**Hala and Dina are making a salad.**

**Hala:** Today, we are going to make a nice salad. The first thing that you have to  
(1) ..... is wash the tomatoes and cucumbers.

**Dina:** OK, I've done that. What next?

**Hala:** (2) ....., peel off the skin. After (3) ....., cut the onions carefully.

**Dina:** OK. I've done that, too.

**Hala:** The next (4)..... is to cut the tomatoes and cucumbers.

**Dina:** That's easy!

### 4) Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

**1- Ahmed :** My father climbed Egypt's highest mountain last week!

**Ramez :** .....

**2. Zeinab :** .....

**Sara :** Congratulations! That's a great test result.

### 5) Read the following , then answer the questions :

There was a man who had a lot of money. He decided to put all his money in a hole at the bottom of his garden. Every week, the man took out his money to look at it. One day, a thief saw the man looking at his money. That night, the thief took it all. When the man realised this the next day, he shouted. His neighbours quickly came round and he told them about his problem. "Have you been using the money?" a neighbour asked. "No, I only looked at it," he replied. "Then you should look in the hole again," said the neighbour. "It will do you just as much good."

### A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why do you think the man put his money in a hole?

.....

2- What has the man been doing with the money?

.....

3- Why did the neighbours come round quickly?

.....

### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**4. Where is the money now?**

a. in the hole   b. in a different garden   c. a thief has it   d. the neighbours have it

**5. the underlined pronoun it refers to .....**

a. neighbours   b. thieves   c. money   d. man

# The Reader

## 6) A- Match column A with column B:

1- Mr Spaulding	a. wrote "the Red-Headed League".
2- Mr Wilson	b. visited Sherlock Holmes at his home in London.
3. Sherlock Holmes	c. realized that Wilson used to be a labourer.
4. Dr Watson	d. wanted Wilson to get the job with Red-Headed League.
	e. believed Holmes was a wonderful detective.

## B- Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Mr Wilson wanted to work for the Red-Headed League?

.....

2. Why do you think Mr Spaulding pushed past all the men who were waiting outside the office?

.....

## 7) Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- The doctor has ..... to the patient all morning  
 a. been talking      b. talking      c. talk      d. talks
- How much sleep ..... children have each night?  
 a. does      b. should      c. shouldn't      d. can't
- ..... the farmer been working in the fields all day?  
 a. Was      b. Have      c. Has      d. How
- You should never look directly at ..... sun.  
 a. a      b. an      c. the      d. no article
- Manal broke her leg, so they took her to hospital in an .....  
 a. ambulance      b. accident      c. album      d. envelope
- Teachers usually have a very good..... . They know all the students' names!  
 a. memorise      b. memory      c. remember      d. revision
- The house has a pretty red ..... on the floor of the dining room  
 a. ladder      b. weave      c. centre      d. carpet
- The children wrote their names on ..... which they put on their school books  
 a. stamps      b. labels      c. posters      d. vans

## 8) Read and correct the underlined words:

- It been raining all day, so we cannot play outside. (.....)
- The doctor told me to take some medical because I was sick (.....)
- You shouldn't to eat too many sweets (.....)
- I write what I do every day in a clock. (.....)

## 9) Write a paragraph of about 90 words on :

**" The hobby you like most"**

## **W.B. Practice test (4b)**

### **1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What is Reem going to learn how to do?

- a. take a photo    b. use a computer    c. speak English    d. colour a photo

2. What does Reem do first?

- a. take the photo    b. turn on the camera  
c. check the computer    d. check the camera

3. What do they use to see Mona on the camera?

- a. a card    b. a different camera    c. a screen    d. a monitor

### **2) Listen and answer the following questions:**

1. What would the girl like to learn?

.....

2. What has Mona been playing for a year?

.....

3. What advice does Mona give?

.....

### **3) Complete the following dialogue:**

**Tarek, Rami and Hassan are talking about chess.**

**Tarek :** How long have you and Rami been playing that game of chess, Hassan?

**Hassan :** We've been playing it (1) ..... nearly an hour.

**Tarek :** I've (2) ..... watching you. How long does it take to learn to play chess?

**Rami :** (3) ..... been playing it for two years, but I'm not very good at it

**Hassan :** It doesn't take long to learn the rules, but you (4) ..... play every week if you want to be good at it.

### **4) Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :**

1) **Aya :** .....

**Mrs Fareeda:** I've been working at this school for two years.

2) **Zeinab :** How do you use this computer, Ali?

**Ali :** .....

### **5) Read the following , then answer the questions :**

When people first made carpets hundreds of years ago, they were useful because they protected feet from cold floors. Over time, carpet-making became an important craft. Turkey was famous for its beautiful carpets in the 1600s, and Cairo was also an important centre for carpets. People travelled from all over the world to buy them. Some people did not want to **tread** on them, so they put them on their walls. Some carpets were very expensive and you needed a lot of skill to make them. Carpet-makers have been using this same skill ever since to make wonderful carpets. However, not all carpets today are made by hand.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1- When did people first make carpets?  
.....

2 Why did people first make carpets?  
.....

3 Why did some people visit Turkey and Cairo in the 1600s?  
.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4-The underlined words "tread on" mean. ....

- a- put your foot on      b. buy      c. weave      d. cook on**

5-the word expensive mean .....

- a-cost a little money      b. cost much money      c. for free      d. a lot of skill**

## The Reader

**6-A) Match column A with column B:**

1- Mr Spaulding	a . made a plan with Spaulding against Wilson.
2- Wilson	b. was the bank manager.
3. Ross	c. met Duncan Ross and took the job.
4. Holmes	d. thought the money of the job would help Wilson and his small shop
	e. could solve a lot of crimes.

**B ) answer the following questions:**

1. What do you think was unusual about the Red-Headed League?  
.....

2. Why do you think Mr Ross gave Mr Wilson the job?  
.....

**7) Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

1. Ahmed has a test next week. He ..... to revise

- a. should start      b. should      c. shouldn't      d. can**

2. Mona..... learning English since she was five.

- a. is      b. have      c. has been      d. have been**

3. I have a new phone. .... phone was not expensive.

- a. A      b. The      c. An      d. It**

4. What book ..... been reading this week?

- a. you have      b. are you      c. have you      d. no have**

5. Write a ..... of the things we need to buy at the shops.

- a. list      b. label      c. diagram      d. diary**

6. You should eat nuts and fruits to improve your .....

- a. remind      b. remember      c. member      d. memory**



## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

nearby	قريب-مجاور	verb	فعل
scenery	مناظر طبيعية	pronoun	ضمير
waterfall	شلال	difference	اختلاف
guide	مرشد	beautiful	جميل
buffalo	جاموسة	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
journey	رحلة طويلة	partner	شريك
trip	رحلة قصيرة	perhaps	
comfortable	مريح	careful	حريص
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	certain	متأكد
sound like	يبدو	cave	كهف
areas	مناطق	fun	متعة - مرح
call-ed	يتصل	favourite	مفضل
enjoy	يستمتع	season	فصل
Saqqara	هرم سقارة	opposite	مقابل- عكس
stay	يبقى - يقيم	the largest	الأكبر-الأضخم
vets	أطباء بيطريين	island	جزيرة
include	يشتمل يتضمن	lucky	محظوظ
travel around	يسافر حول	interesting	شيق-مثير
desert	صحراء	reported speech	الكلام الغير مباشر
horse	حصان	animals	حيوانات
animal clinic	عيادة للحيوان	village	قرية

## Confusing Words

call	يتصل- يدعي	sand	رمال	nearby	بالقرب	desert	صحراء	farm	مزرعة
cool	رائع/يُبرد	send	يرسل	nearly	تقريباً	dessert	تحلية	form	إستمارة

## Prepositions &amp; Expressions

sound like fun	يبدو ممتعا	know a lot about	يعرف الكثير عن
by the river	بجوار النهر	in a nearby village	في قرية قريبة
along the Nile	بمحاذاة النيل	look after	يعتنى بـ
on/at a farm	في مزرعة	the whole area	المنطقة بأكملها
around the desert	حول الصحراء	go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة

travel around	يتجول حول	have an interesting time	يقضي وقت ممتع
on a horse	علي ظهر الحصان	What else ?	ماذا ايضا
through the window	من خلال النافذة	covered in	مغطى بـ
Lucky him!	يا له من محظوظ	learn a lot about	يتعلم الكثير عن

## Opposites

comfortable مريح	uncomfortable غير مريح	beautiful جميل	ugly قبيح
certain متأكد	uncertain غير متأكد	here هنا	there هناك

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

say يقول	said	said	think يعتقد	thought	thought
spend يقضي	spent	spent	know يعرف	knew	known
learn يتعلم	learned	learned	drive يقود	drove	driven
sleep ينام	slept	slept	can يستطيع	could	could
tell يخبر	told	told	lie يرقد	lay	lain

## Definitions

Guide مرشد	someone who works with tourists and gives them information
Dunes كثبان رملية	a hill made of sand shaped by the wind
Scenery منظر طبيعي	Features of Mountains , rivers, forests etc ...
Vet طبيب بيطري	an animal doctor who looks after animals and gives them medicine.

## Language Notes

**trip** رحلة قصيرة لغرض معين (متعة / عمل)

⇒ Heba said that she was enjoying her trip to Saqqara

**journey** رحلة طويلة (مسافة)

⇒ The journey to France was hard.

**flight** رحلة جوية

⇒ What time is your flight to London?

**voyage** رحلة بحرية

⇒ We went to Italy by ship. It was an amazing voyage.

**all+ اسم جمع كل**

⇒ All boys love football.

**the whole+ اسم مفرد كل**

⇒ I've read the whole book.

⇒ The whole area is covered in sand dunes.

**covered in (ملتصق لا يمكن رفعه) مغطى بـ**

⇒ All birds covered in feathers.

⇒ The whole area is covered in sand dunes.

**covered with (يمكن رفعه) مغطى بـ**

⇒ I covered the floor with a a carpet.

## Reading

### **Read this conversation between two boys**

**A:** Ali just called. He said that he was enjoying his trip to Saqqara with his father! He said that they were staying at a farm where there were a lot of animals, including goats and buffalo. He said that they were travelling around the desert on horses.

**B: What did he say about Saqqara?**

**A:** He said that the scenery was beautiful, with green areas by the river and the big white sand dunes of the desert.

**B: That sounds like fun! What else did he say?**

**A:** He said that they were learning a lot about the desert from their guide Walid. He said that Walid was going to take them to an animal clinic in a nearby village. The vets there help the farmers to look after their animals.

**B: I think Ali's having an interesting time in Saqqara. Lucky him!**

**Reported speech الكلام غير المباشر**

الكلام المباشر: هو الكلام الصادر من المتكلم نفسه ويوضع بين علامتي تنصيص ” “

He said “We are staying at a farm.”

الكلام الغير المباشر: هو الكلام المنقول عن المتكلم بواسطة شخص اخر

He said they were staying at a farm.

**Statement الجملة الخبرية**

عند تحويل الجملة الخبرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الخطوات الآتية :

1- فعل القول

said → said

said to → told

2- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بكلمة ( that ) ويمكن حذفها .

3- تحول الضمائر داخل الأقواس حسب المعنى (متكلم / مخاطب) .

( متكلم )

I → He  
→ She

me → him  
→ her

my → his  
→ her

We → They

our → their

us → them

Ahmed said " I'm playing video games with my sister."

Ahmed said that he was playing video games with his sister

Sarah said "I am enjoying my trip to Saqqara."

Sarah said that she was enjoying her trip to Saqqara.

"I'm going to visit my grandmother," said Hana.

Hana said that she was going to visit her grandmother.

( مخاطب )

You (أنت) → I  
→ He  
→ She

you (متكلم) → me  
→ him  
→ her

your → my  
→ his  
→ her

Mum said to Mahmoud "You can play tennis on Saturday."

Mum told Mahmoud that he could play tennis on Saturday.

“

It's nice to see **you**, Hazem!" said Ashraf.

(You) هنا ضمير مفعول للمخاطب والمخاطب مذكر فتحول إلي (him)

Ashraf told Hazem it was nice to see **him**.

**لا يتم تغير الأزمنة داخل الاقواس اذا كان فعل القول في زمن المضارع (Say, says - tell, tells)**

Salma says to Hala "I **want** to show **you** a photo."

Salma tells Hala that **she wants** to show **her** a photo.

وإذا كان فعل القول في الماضي ( said أو said to ) تحول الأزمنة والظروف كما يلي :

الأزمنة	
مباشر	غير مباشر
- مضارع بسيط (inf - s/es/ies)	- ( شاذ - ماضي بسيط (d/ed/ied)
- مضارع مستمر (am/is/are) + V.ing	- ماضي مستمر (was/were) + V.ing
- مضارع تام (has/have) + P.P.	- ماضي تام (had + P.P.)
- will - can - shall - may	- would - could - should - might
- must	- must / had to
الظروف	
last year "→ the year before	now "→ then
ago "→ before	today "→ that day
this "→ that	tonight "→ that night
these "→ those	tomorrow "→ the following/next day
here "→ there	next week "→ the following week
come "→ go	yesterday "→ the day before

- Ali said "I am enjoying my trip to Saqqara!"
- **Ali said that he was enjoying his trip to Saqqara.**
- "We are staying at a farm." Said Ali.
- **Ali said that they were staying at a farm.**
- Ali said "The scenery is beautiful."
- **Ali said that the scenery was beautiful.**
- "Walid is going to take us to an animal clinic, Salma." said Ali
- **Ali told Salma that Walid was going to take them to an animal clinic.**
- "I want to play a game with you," said my brother.
- **My brother said that he wanted to play a game with me.**

- "It's nice to see you, Hazem!" said Ashraf.
- **Ashraf told Hazem that it was nice to see him.**
- "I'm going to visit my grandmother," said Hana.
- **Hana said that she was going to visit her grandmother.**
- "Aunt Nadia is coming for lunch with us on Friday," said Mum.
- **Mum said that Aunt Nadia was coming for lunch with them on Friday.**
- "You can play tennis on Saturday, Mahmoud," said Anas.
- **Anas told Mahmoud that he could play on Saturday**
- My mother said "Your dinner is ready!"
- **My mum said that my dinner was ready.**
- The teacher said to us "You are going to do a spelling test."
- **The teacher told us that they were going to do a spelling test.**
- "I can invite you to my party." said Ahmed
- **Ahmed said that he could invite me to his party.**
- The weather reporter said "It's going to be very hot later."
- **The weather reporter said that it was going to be very hot later.**

### ملاحظات هامة

1. لا نغير الزمن مع الحقائق و تظل في زمن المضارع البسيط  
**He told me that the sun rises in the east.**
2. ( say /said ) لا ياتي بعدها مفعول ( شخص )
3. ( say to/ said to ) ياتي بعدها مفعول و تاتي دائما في الكلام المباشر
4. ( tell /told ) ياتي بعدها دائما مفعول و تاتي دائما في غير المباشر
5. في سؤال الاختيار من متعدد في حالة عدم وجود أقواس يكون الكلام غير مباشر فنختار الماضي بشرط ألا يكون فعل القول مضارع أو الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة علمية
6. المتكلم يأخذ الضمير I بمشتقاته لكن المخاطب يأخذ you بمشتقاته

### Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

- 1- 1. She ..... she enjoyed her stay there.  
a) says                      b) said to                      c) told                      d) said that
- 2- He told me that it..... a nice trip.  
a) is                      b) was                      c) will be                      d) would
- 3- Ahmed told his sister that..... enjoyed his trip.  
a) he                      b) she                      c) his                      d) her
- 4- Nabila ..... her brother that she stayed there for a week.  
a) said                      b) told                      c) asked                      d) wanted

- 5- Mohsen said that he ..... in Alexandria for a week.  
 a) 'd be                      b) 'll be                      c) can be                      d) is
- 6- Ahmed said, "I ..... going to Hurghada tomorrow."  
 a) am                      b) was                      c) would                      d) will
- 7- "I'm coming for lunch, Adef"; ..... Nader.  
 a) say                      b) said                      c) to say                      d) saying
- 8- Ramadan told me that he ..... to visit his uncle.  
 a) wants                      b) want                      c) wanted                      d) has wanted
- 9- This bed is very ..... I slept very well!  
 a) comfortable                      b) careful                      c) certain                      d) interesting
- 10- Some of the ..... in the desert are 150 metres high.  
 a) caves                      b) dunes                      c) wells                      d) canals
- 11- We spent the train journey along the Nile looking at the ..... through the window.  
 a) scenery                      b) season                      c) walk                      d) flight
- 12- The farmer's horse was ill, so he took it to see a .....  
 a) doctor                      b) clinic                      c) vet                      d) guide
- 13- ..... are some of the largest animals on that farm.  
 a) Elephants                      b) Goats                      c) Buffalo                      d) Whales
- 14- We looked out of the train windows to see the beautiful .....  
 a) surveys                      b) flight                      c) walk                      d) scenery
- 15- The ..... looks after sick animals.  
 a) vet                      b) chemist                      c) mechanic                      d) guide
- 16- We get meat and milk from .....  
 a) trees                      b) buffaloes                      c) horses                      d) donkeys
- 17- I saw a lot of sand ..... in the desert.  
 a) waves                      b) mails                      c) dunes                      d) lakes
- 18- We got a lot of useful information from the ..... in our visit to the museum.  
 a) guide                      b) vet                      c) doctor                      d) tourist
- 19- At a farm, there are animals ..... horses and camels.  
 a) including                      b) consisting                      c) containing                      d) having
- 20- Some of the whole ..... in Saqqara is covered in sand dunes.  
 a) country                      b) area                      c) hill                      d) mountain
- 21- Shahd is going on a ..... around the desert.  
 a) school                      b) trip                      c) tribe                      d) drive

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Soad said Nour that she was late. (.....)
2. Ahmed told his sister that he would help she. (.....)
3. He told me that he is at school at 8:00. (.....)
4. "I'm a new student" told Ali. (.....)
5. Omar said that he is enjoying his trip to Luxor. (.....)
6. He told that he wanted to play chess. (.....)
7. The vet showed us the way around the temple. (.....)

8. As we flew above Cairo in a plane, we watched the beautiful **communication**.  
(.....)
9. Walid is **leaving** a lot about the desert. (.....)
10. Moher told me that he **will** call me. (.....)
11. Abeer tells me that she **would** meet me the next day. (.....)

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&4

path	ممر	Wadi al-Rayan	وادي الريان
tent	خيمة	weather	طقس
Djara cave	كهف الجارة (بالصحراء الغربية)	century	قرن
mud	طين	soft	ناعم
blanket	بطانية	somewhere	في مكان ما
straw	قش	pets	حيوانات أليفة
sleep on	ينام على	dry	جاف
Anyway,	علي أي حال	hurt	يجرح
bats	خفافيش	rug	سجادة
experience	خبرة	relatives	أقارب
snakes	ثعابين	comfortable	مريح
might	ربما	outside	خارج
nervous of	متوتر من	forest	غابة
explorer	مستكشف	warm	دافئ
further	أبعد	Tell al-Amarna	تل العمارنه
conversation	محادثة	pharaoh	فرعون
camel	جمل	long drive	قيادة سيارة لفترة طويلة
sheep	خروف	gold fish	سمكة ذهبية

## Confusing Words

trip	رحلة	shout	يصيح	path	ممر	mud	طين
tribe	قبيلة	shoot	يطلق الرصاص	bath	حمام	soil	تربة زراعية

## Prepositions & Expressions

frightened of	خائف من	get dark	يحل الظلام
frozen waterfall	شلال متجمد	walkthrough	يمشي خلال

remind...of	يذكر بـ	along a path	بطول ممر
stay with	يقيم مع	tired from	متعب من
used for	يستخدم في	lie on	يرقد علي
get lost	يضل الطريق	put up the tent	ينصب خيمة
during the day	اثناء النهار	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية
stop for	يتوقف لـ	take a trip	يذهب في رحلة
go into the cave	يدخل الكهف	far from	بعيدا عن

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

mean	يعنى	meant	meant	drive	يقود	drove	driven
leave	يغادر/ يترك	left	left	show	يعرض	showed	shown
freeze	يتجمد/ يجمد	froze	frozen	lie	يرقد	lay	lain

## Definitions

Bat	خفاش	an animal that flies at night and sleeps during the day.
Mud	طين	soil that is soft and wet
Path	ممر	something people use to walk through a desert or a forest.
Straw	قش	dry parts of a plant used for animals to sleep on.
Tent	خيمة	something you sleep in when you go camping

## Language Notes

**take+ مصدر + to+ مدة** يستغرق

⇒ It took us three hours to drive there

**see/hear/watch+ مصدر / v ing**

⇒ we heard ahmed shout/shouting.

**remember** يتذكر بنفسه

⇒ I remember Ahmed's address.

**remind** يذكر (يذكر شخص آخر)

⇒ That reminds me of a trip we once took to the Djara cave

## Tapescript



**Hisham:** Have you ever seen the desert?

**Boy 2:** No, I haven't. **I mean,** I've seen a lot of photos of it, but I've never been there myself.

**Hisham:** Don't you want to visit it one day?

**Boy 2:** **Well,** yes, but **the thing is,** I'm really frightened of snakes. There are lots of snakes in the desert.

**Hisham:** That reminds me of a trip we once took to the Djara cave. Our relatives from France were staying with us for a holiday and they wanted to see it.

**Anyway,** we left Cairo early in the morning. It took us almost a day to drive there.

**Boy 2:** Did you go into the cave when you got there ?

**Hisham:** No, because it was getting dark, **you see.** We were tired from the long drive, so we put up our tents and started to cook our dinner. We ate under the stars far from any lights. I felt like I was the only person on earth.

**Boy 2:** **I know what you mean.** I love camping. **Anyway,** you were saying....?

**Hisham:** Yes, so we slept outside and the next day, we spent the whole day inside the cave. it's the most amazing place; the rocks look like frozen waterfalls.

**Boy 2:** Were there any bats?

**Hisham:** Perhaps, but I didn't see any! They were probably sleeping. **Anyway,** after another night in a tent outside the cave, we drove further into the desert.

**Boy 2:** Weren't you nervous ?

**Hisham:** Yes, there weren't any other people or cars around at all. We stopped for lunch and my uncle and cousin went for a walk along a path. Then suddenly we heard them shout, "Come and look what we We found!"

**Boy 2:** What was it?

**Hisham:** it was a huge snake! Well, I've never run so fast in my life!

**Monday, 23rd March**

I have just got home after I visited my uncle and aunt in Mallawi. My two cousins were also there. On Saturday, they took me to Tell al-Amarna. It is an ancient site in the desert which archaeologists are studying. My aunt said that Pharaoh Akhenaten and Queen Nefertiti built a city there. My uncle said that they only lived there for twelve years. It is a beautiful place and I enjoyed my visit to the desert. We went back to their house in the evening. I had a wonderful meal! I

**Keeping the conversation going** استمرار الحوار

I mean ... ..	أنا أعني / أقصد	Anyway, .....	على أية حال
Well .....	حسنا	You were saying .....	كنت تقول
The thing is .....	الموضوع أن / الأمر هو	I know what you mean. .	أعرف ما تقصد .
You see .....	هل تفهم		

Did I tell you about the time I went to the beach?

**Well**, it was last summer, when I was staying with my aunt in Alexandria.

When I first went to Cairo, I got lost! **The thing is**, I wasn't carrying a map.

We went on a desert tour with a guide. **You see**, if you don't do that, you won't know where to go.

**Complete the following dialogue with one word each:**

**Fady** : Did you (1).....have a good trip to England?

**Hussein** : (2) ....., I'm happy to be home again.

**Fady** : Didn't you like it there?

**Hussein** : No, I did, but the (3) ..... is, I don't like cold weather.

I mean it was August, but it rained every day! I prefer hot weather.

**Fady** : I know what you mean. (4) ....., did you practise your English?

**Hussein** : Yes, it's much better now!

**Complete the following dialogue with one word each:**

**Taha and Hamza are talking about Hamza's trip to England.**

**Taha** : Hi, Hamza. Did you have a good holiday in England?

**Hamza**: Yes, I enjoyed it, (1) ..... it wasn't my best holiday.

**Taha** : Why was that?

**Hamza**: The (2) ..... is, the weather was very bad every day.

**Taha** : I'd love to go to England! Sorry, you were saying (3) ..... the weather.

**Hamza**: Yes, it was cold and windy! (4) ....., it was good to practise my English.

**Complete the following dialogue with one word each:**

**Hatem and samir are talking about a trip**

**Samir** : I see that you are back.

**Hatem**: oh! It was a very nice (1).....

**Samir** : (2)..... did you go?

**Hatem**: to Saqqara, we (3)..... a goodtime there.

**Samir** : (4)..... did you go there?

**Hatem**: we went by car.

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues**

1) **Amal** : How did you feel when you got into the cave ?

**Sama** : .....

2) **Ahmed** : .....

**Tamer** : Yes, I know what you mean.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- The ..... up the mountain was used every week, so it was easy to follow.  
a) bath                      b) path                      c) bathe                      d) tub
- 2- We get ..... water from the Nile,  
a) salt                      b) bad                      c) fresh                      d) hot
- 3- The dry parts of a plant used for animals to sleep on are called.....  
a) root                      b) tree                      c) mud                      d) straw
- 4- A/An ..... is something we sleep in when we go camping.  
a) hat                      b) umbrella                      c) tent                      d) bed
- 5- Mr Ibrahim had an interesting..... last week. He went camping in the Western Desert.  
a) experience                      b) experiment                      c) exercise                      d) conversation
- 6- He uses a torch to go into the mountain.....  
a) cave                      b) tent                      c) hill                      d) top
- 7- ..... fly at night, but sleep during the day.  
a) Plies                      b) Birds                      c) Bats                      d) Pigeons
- 8- There was a lot of..... next to the river, so it was difficult to walk there.  
a) food                      b) mud                      c) dune                      d) earth
- 9- Ali said that he was enjoying his .....to Saqqara .  
a) car                      b) trip                      c) voyage                      d) class
- 10- Tourists always .....at a hotel.  
a) stay                      b) play                      c) go                      d) visit
- 11- The .....has got a lot of animals.  
a) school                      b) class                      c) farm                      d) hotel
- 12- Farmers keep cows and .....to get milk and meat.  
a) donkeys                      b) horses                      c) dogs                      d) buffaloes
- 13- I enjoy the beautiful .....of the countryside.  
a) scenery                      b) sight                      c) viewpoint                      d) cinema
- 14- The desert has a lot of .....  
a) mud                      b) water                      c) plants                      d) sand
- 15- The trip .....interesting.  
a) sees                      b) sounds                      c) voices                      d) makes
- 16- The teacher said .....it was a difficult lesson.  
a) to                      b) if                      c) that                      d) which

- 17- He said that he .....on a farm .  
 a) **is staying**      b) **was staying**      c) **will stay**      d) **stay**
- 18- My teacher told me that the earth ..... round the sun.  
 a) **turned**      b) **will turn**      c) **has turned**      d) **turns**
- 19- This mountain has a big .....  
 a) **cave**      b) **tent**      c) **bat**      d) **desert**
- 20- He .....the car needed a good service .  
 a) **say**      b) **tells**      c) **said**      d) **says**
- 21- I enjoyed the .....of the fields with their animals .  
 a) **film**      b) **scenery**      c) **sight**      d) **series**
- 22- Our animals sleep on dry .....  
 a) **straw**      b) **stem**      c) **stick**      d) **mud**

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- Noha said that my favourite sport was tennis. ( ..... )
- 2- My brother told me that he enjoys his visit. ( ..... )
- 3- I love going camping and sleeping in waves. ( ..... )
- 4- There was a lot of muddy on your shoes. ( ..... )
- 5- We used to walk on the bath through the desert. ( ..... )
- 6- The farmer put street on the ground for the sheep to lie on. ( ..... )
- 7- We saw a but flying through the night sky . ( ..... )
- 8- She said that she is helping her mother with the housework. ( ..... )
- 9- Did you had a good trip to England? ( ..... )
- 10-He told me the he visited my father at the hospital. ( ..... )
- 11-She said that she is ill. ( ..... )

Unit  
14

## schools around the world

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

nursery	حضانة	hurry	يسرع
primary	إبتدائي	use	يستخدم
preparatory	إعدادي	need- ed	يحتاج
secondary	ثانوي	clothes	ملابس
university	جامعة	vocabulary	مفردات - كلمات
uniform	زي موحد	inside	داخل
private lesson	درس خاص	outside	خارج
formal≠ informal	رسمي ≠ غير رسمي	young≠ old	صغير السن ≠ كبير السن
magazine	مجلة	before≠ after	قبل ≠ بعد
article	مقال	aged	بالغ من العمر/ عمره
school times	مواعيد الدراسة	classroom	فصل دراسي
necessary	ضروري	private ≠public	خاص ≠ عام
obligation	إلزام	Japan	اليابان
opening times	أوقات العمل	Japanese	ياباني
What age= How old	كم عمر	Brazil	البرازيل
building	مبنى	Brazilian	برازيلي
most	معظم	rules	قواعد
also	أيضاً	student	طالب
through	خلال	practise	يتدرب

## Confusing Words

nursery حضانة	age عمر	lesson درس	Practice ممارسة	private خاص (شخصي)
nurse ممرضة	aged يبلغ من العمر	listen يستمع	Practice يمارس	special خاص (مميز)

## Prepositions &amp; Expressions

do exams	يؤدي امتحانات	tak a lesson	يأخذ حصة
in time	في الوقت المناسب	aged six	عمره 6 سنوات
on time	في الوقت المحدد	during the day	أثناء النهار
at lunch time	في وقت الغداء	talk about	يتحدث عن
walk by herself	تمشي بمفردها	for work	من اجل العمل
have private lessons	يتلقى دروس خصوصية	on the right	على اليمين

lack of	نقص في	at the age of...= aged	في عمر.....
a/per/each day =daily	يومية في اليوم	from the age of. ..to....	من سن .. الى .....
get well	يتحسن صحيا	look after	يعتني ب
do well	يؤدي بشكل جيد	in the classroom	في الفصل

## Opposites

formal رسمي	informal غير رسمي	the same نفس	different مختلف
private خاص	public عام	necessary ضروري	unnecessary غير ضروري

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

get up ينهض	got up	got up	know يعرف	knew	known
do يفعل	did	done	come into يدخل	came into	come into
wear يرتدي	wore	worn	have to يجب أن	had to	had to

## Definitions

Necessary ضروري	what you need to do or have
Nursery school حضانة	a place where very young children are looked after during the day
Exam إمتحان	a formal test
Primary school مدرسة ابتدائية	a school for students aged six to about eleven
Private lesson درس خاص	a lesson that you go to outside school
Uniform زي موحد	the clothes that some people have to wear at school or for work

## Language Notes

a/every(day- week - month- year)= ...ly كل/في

⇒ I go to the club a week/every week/weekly.

Experience خبرة في العمل (لا تعد)

⇒ I have some experience in teaching.

An xperience / experiences تجربة (موقف ما) / تجارب

⇒ My flight to Londom was an experience I will never forget..

**See/hear/watch+مفعول+ v ing/ inf**

⇒ We heard them shoting/shout..

**Take+مدة+ to مصدر يستغرق**

⇒ It took us two hours to arrive.

**Reading****Three Schools**

- All children in Egypt have to go to school from the age of six to fifteen. They can go to nursery school from the age of four, but they don't have to go. At primary and preparatory school, all students have to wear a uniform.
- Japanese students don't have a uniform at primary school, but they have to wear a uniform at secondary school. They have to clean the school building at lunch time. Most students practise sports or music after school. Many students also have private lessons. Although they don't have to go to these lessons, many students go because they want to do well in their exams.
- In Brazil, students don't have to go to school for more than five hours a day. Schools have different opening times. Lessons can be in the morning, afternoon or evening. Brazilian children start school when they are six.

Yuna is Japanese. She goes to secondary school. She doesn't have to wear a uniform, but she has to clean her school at lunchtime.

**Obligation and Lack of Obligation الإلزام و عدم الإلزام**

I / We / They / You → have  
He/She / It → has } مصدر to+ ينبغي أن

**تعبير عن الإلزام خارجي مفروض علينا (قواعد - قوانين - عادات) ليس لنا خيار**

- ✓ All children in Egypt **have to go** to school from the age of six to fifteen.
- ✓ At primary and preparatory school, all students **have to wear** a uniform.
- ✓ We **have to go** to school five days a week.
- ✓ He **has to go** to school on time.
- ✓ All children have to to do exams at school.

- ✓ You **have to use** a pen to write the exam. Don't use a pencil.
- ✓ All students **have to come** to school on time.
- ✓ People **have to drive** on the right in Egypt.
- ✓ My aunt **has to work** at night sometimes because she is a nurse.
- ✓ You **have to read** quietly.
- ✓ You **have to wear** the correct shoes.
- ✓ You **have to look** left and right before you cross.

I / We / They / You → don't have  
 He/She / It → doesn't has } مصدر + to لا ينبغي أن

للتعبير عن عدم ضرورة فعل شيء (ليس هناك ضرورة لفعل شيء ولكن يمكن أن تفعله ان أردت)

- ✓ You **don't have to buy** anything.
- ✓ Children **don't have to take** private lessons after school.
- ✓ They **don't have to go** to these lessons.
- ✓ In Brazil, students **don't have to go** to school for more than five hours a day.
- ✓ Hassan **doesn't have to learn** this vocabulary because he already knows it.
- ✓ Children **don't have to wear** their uniforms after school.
- ✓ Egyptian children **don't have to go** to nursery school.

عند تكوين سؤال بمعنى هل نستخدم الصيغة التالية

Do /Does + subject فاعل + have to + infinitive?

Yes, ضمير do/does.

No, ضمير don't /doesn't.

- ✓ Do you have to get up at seven o'clock?  
 ⇒ Yes, I do. No, I don't.
- ✓ Does she have to eat breakfast?  
 ⇒ Yes, she does. No, she doesn't.

عند السؤال بأداة استفهام يكون شكل السؤال كالتالي:

WH +do/does + subject فاعل + have to + inf. مصدر?

الإجابة + مصدر + have/has to + فاعل

- What do you have to do before you go to school?  
 ⇒ I have to make my bed.

- What do they have to do when the teacher comes into the classroom?  
⇒ they have to listen carefully.
- What does she have to do after school?  
⇒ She has to sweep the floor.
- What don't you have to do at the weekend?  
⇒ I don't have to set the table

**Complete the following dialogue with one word each:**

**Mary and Fady are talking about schools in Egypt**

**Mary:** At what (1).....do Egyptians have to go to school?

**Fady :** At the age of (2).....

**Mary:** What do students in primary and prep schools have to (3).....?

**Fady :** I have to wear (4) .....a uniform

**Mary:** Do all children go to nursery school?

**Fady :** Not at all

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- You..... use a pen to write the exam. Don't use a pencil.  
a) has to      b) don't have to      c) doesn't have to      d) have to
- 2- All students..... come to school on time.  
a) has to      b) don't have to      c) have      d) have to
- 3- Hassan .....learn this vocabulary because he already knows it.  
a) has to      b) don't have to      c) doesn't have to      d) not have to
- 4- My aunt..... work at night sometimes because she is a nurse.  
a) has to      b) don't have to      c) has      d) have to
- 5- Egyptian children ..... go to nursery school.  
a) has to      b) don't have to      c) has      d) have to
- 6- Children ..... wear their uniforms after school.  
a) has to      b) don't have to      c) doesn't have to      d) have to
- 7- All children ..... do exams at school.  
a) has to      b) don't have to      c) doesn't have to      d) have to
- 8- The plane leaves early tomorrow morning so Ola ..... get up at 4 a.m.!  
a) have to      b) have      c) has to      d) has
- 9- It is cloudy today, so we.....take our sunglasses.  
a) don't have to      b) not have to      c) don't have      d) have not to
- 10- You..... be careful when you walk in the desert.  
a) have to      b) has to      c) have      d) has
- 11- all children go to .....school at the age of six in Egypt.  
a) nursery      b) primary      c) preparatory      d) secondary

- 12- my brother is very clever, he never takes.....  
 a) exams      b) tests      c) private lessons      d) homework
- 13- children .....six can go to primary school.  
 a) named      b) aged      c) came      d) went
- 14- wearing a school.....is necessary.  
 a) helmet      b) uniform      c) skit      d) gates
- 15- .....school is a school for students aged from six to about eleven.  
 a) Secondary      b) preparatory      c) Primary      d) Nursery
- 16- Many children in Egypt go to ..... school before they are six years old.  
 A) primary      b) nursery      c) secondary      d) preparatory
- 17- Children don't have to take ..... lessons after school.  
 a) public      b) private      c) popular      d) polite
- 18- In Egypt, a person can drive a car..... the age of 18.  
 a) on      b) in      c) at      d) from
- 19- I have six lessons .....  
 b) day      b) a day      c) days      d) at day
- 20- When students finish the ..... school, they join the university.  
 a) nursery      b) primary      c) preparatory      d) secondary
- 21- When does he..... go to school ?  
 a) have      b) have to      c) has to      d) has
- 22- My sister Samya..... to take private lessons. She is very good.  
 a) has      b) have      c) doesn't have      d) don't have

### Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- An exam is a formal taste. ( ..... )
- 2- We has to go to school tomorrow because it's a holiday. ( ..... )
- 3- You have look right and left when you cross the road. ( ..... )
- 4- I have an excellent teacher at school, so I don't need any public lessons. ( ..... )
- 5- It's raining very hard, so it is impossible for me to take an umbrella. ( ..... )
- 6- Why does she has to go now ? ( ..... )
- 7- My sister's friend don't have to come late. ( ..... )
- 8- I read an article about schools round the world. ( ..... )
- 9- Children in Egypt have to go to school at the aged of six. ( ..... )



## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&4

Washing up	غسل الاواني	guess	يخمن
jobs	أعمال/مهام/وظائف	bookcase	خزانة الكتب
survey	استبيان / إستطلاع رأي	result	نتيجة
mind	يمانع	set	يعد/يجهز
machine	آلة	person	شخص
washing machine	غسالة ملابس	cross	يعبر
dish washer	غسالة أطباق	ticket	تذكرة
vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربائية	subject	مادة دراسية
Not at all	لا على الإطلاق	market	سوق
whether	إذا - سواء- لو	article	مقال
dry	جاف/يجفف	leave home	يترك المنزل
bookcase	خزانة الكتب	both	كلا من
speaker	متحدث	activity	نشاط
rules	قواعد	friendly	ودود
meal	وجبة	without	بدون
Which jobs ?	أي وظائف/إعمال	percent	في المائة %
popular	شائع	market	سوق

## Confusing Words

set	يجهز	floor	ارضية	whether	اذا / او	leave	يترك/يغادر
sit	يجلس	flour	دقيق	weather	طقس	leaf	ورقة شجر

## Jobs in the House

do the washing up	يقوم بغسيل الأطباق	help with meals	يساعد في الوجبات
sweep the floor	يكس الأرضية	dry the dishes	يجفف الأطباق
make the bed	يرتب الفراش	set the table	يرتب المائدة

## Prepositions & Expressions

do jobs	يؤدي مهام	do a survey	يقوم بعمل استطلاع رأي
Do you mind if I+inf.?	هل تمانع ؟	carry out a survey about	يقوم بعمل استطلاع رأي
on the bookcase	في خزانة الكتب	Drive ..... to school	يوصل بالسيارة
What about+ v+ing?	... ما رأيك ؟	stay for	يمكث لمدة
in English	باللغة الانجليزية	at home	في المنزل

stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر	thank you for ( ing)	شكرا علي
jobs in the house	أعمال المنزل	Nice to meet you	سعيد لمقابلتك

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

set	يعد	set	set	leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left
sweep	يكنس	swept	swept	make	يصنع	made	made

## Opposites

helpful	متعاون	unhelpful	غير متعاون	formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي
quietly	بهدهوء	noisily	بصخب	usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير وودود	possible	ممکن	impossible	مستحيل

## Tapescript



### One

**Girl 1:** Good morning. I'm doing a survey about jobs in the house. Do you mind if I ask you some questions about jobs in the house

**Girl 2:** Not at all.

**Girl 1:** Which jobs do you have to do in the house For example, could you tell me whether you have to sweep the floors?

**Girl 2:** No, I don't.

**Girl 1:** Do you have to make your bed?

**Girl 2:** Oh yes, I have to do that every day.

**Girl 1:** What about helping with meals ? Could you tell me whether you have to set the table?

**Girl 2:** No, I don't. But I have to do the washing up and dry the dishes, too.

**Girl 1:** Thank you for answering my questions.

### Two

**Boy 1:** Excuse me, could I ask you some questions?

**Boy 2:** Yes, of course.

**Boy 1:** Could you tell me whether you have to sweep the floors at home ? Or make your bed?

**Boy 2:** I don't have to sweep the floors, but I have to make my bed.

**Boy 1:** Could you tell me whether you have to set the table?

**Boy 2:** Yes, my sister and I both have to do that.

**Boy 1:** Who has to do the washing up?

**Boy 2:** My sister has to do that. I have to dry the dishes.

### Three

**Girl 1:** Hello, Fareeda! Is it OK if I ask you some questions ? it is for my survey

**Fareeda:** That is fine! What is your survey about?

**Girl 1:** It is about jobs in the house. Which jobs do you have to do at home ? Do you have to sweep the floors?

**Fareeda:** Yes, I do. I have to do that every day.

## Language Functions

### Asking and answering questions formally السؤال والإجابة بطريقة رسمية

**Do you mind if I ask you some questions (about)?** هل تمنع لو سألتك بعض الأسئلة ؟

⇒ Not at all. لا علي الإطلاق

**Excuse me. Could I ask you some questions (about ...)?** معذرة. هل يمكنني ؟

⇒ Yes, of course./Sure. بالطبع

**Could you tell me whether you have to ..?** هل يمكنك اخباري لو/إذا ؟

⇒ No, I don't. I have to.....

⇒ No, I don't have to .....

⇒ Yes, I have to do that.

**Could you tell me whether you have to set the table?**

⇒ No, I don't. I have to sweep the floor.

⇒ No, I don't have to do that/No, I don't have to set the table?

⇒ Yes, I have to do that./ Yes, I have to set the table.

### Asking and answering questions informally السؤال والإجابة بطريقة غير رسمية

**Hello. Is it oK if I ask you some questions (about ...)?** مرحبًا هل تواق لو /إذا..... ؟

⇒ - That's fine.

**Do you (have to sweep the floors)?**

⇒ Yes, I do. No, I don't.

**Nawal:** Hello, is it OK if I ask you some questions?

**Lateefa:** That's fine with me. What would you like to ask?

**Amira:** Do you mind if I ask you some questions ?

**Heidi:** Not all all.

Nada: **Could you tell me whether you have to sweep the floor?**

Ola : I don't have to sweep the floor, but I have to make my bed.

**The Negative Forms Of Adjectives**

( the prefixes) **un-** / **im-** / **in-**:

( in / im / un) لنفي الصفات نستخدم عادة نستخدم البادئة

unnecessary (= not necessary)

impossible (= not possible)

informal (= not formal)

incorrect (= not correct)

in	im	un
formal رسمي	possible ممكن	usual عادي
informal	impossible	unusual
correct صحيح	patient صبور	necessary ضروري
incorrect	impatient	unnecessary
		friendly ودود
		unfriendly
		healthy صحي
		unhealthy

**Supply the missing parts in the following**

**Samira is asking Rawan some questions about a school project.**

**Samira:** Excuse me. I'm (1)..... a school project about jobs which people do at home. Can I ask you some questions?

**Rawan:** Yes, of (2).....

**Samira:** Could you tell me (3) ..... you make your bed every day?

**Rawan:** Yes, I do.

**Samira:** OK, and do you sweep the floor?

**Rawan:** Well, no, I don't sweep the floor often. I mean, I sweep the floor (4)..... , when my mother wants me to help.

**Supply the missing parts in the following**

**Jana is doing a survey about people's jobs.**

**Jana :** Do you (1) ..... if I ask you some questions?

**Mr Ali :** What would you like to know, Jana?

**Jana :** Could you (2) ..... me whether you enjoy your job?

**Mr Ali :** Oh! Yes, I (3) ..... teaching.

**Jana :** (4) ..... long have you been teaching?

**Mr Ali :** I've been teaching for 16 years.

**Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues**

**1) Ahmed:** what do you have to do before you go to school?

**Mona :** .....

**2) Salma:** .....?

**Basma:** Not at all.

3) **Boy 1:** .....

**Boy 2:** Yes, my sister and I both have to do that.

4) **Nawal :** Hello, .....

**Lateefa :** That's fine with me. What would you like to ask?

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**

- 1- Miss Eman, you want to work here. .... some questions?  
 a) Will I ask      b) I'll ask      c) Could I ask you      d) Do I ask you
- 2- A: Hi, Magda. Can I ask you which jobs you have to do at home?  
 B:.....  
 a) Not at all.      b) That's fine.      c) Nice to meet you.      d) No, I don't.
- 3- You have to ..... quietly in a library.  
 a) reading      b) reads      c) read      d) red
- 4- You have to put books on the .....  
 a) ground      b) table      c) bookcase      d) chair
- 5- You ..... look left and right before you cross a street or a road.  
 a) don't have to      b) have      c) has to      d) have to
- 6- You have to buy a ..... before you get on a bus or train.  
 a) book      b) ticket      c) ball      d) bag
- 7- Hello. .... I ask you some questions about your home? Not at all.  
 a) Do you mind if      b) Is it OK if      c) What      d) Can
- 8- Hi, Magda. Can I ask you which jobs you have to do at home? ....  
 a) Not at all.      b) That's fine.      c) Nice to meet you.      d) No, I don't
- 9- Before you eat, you have to ..... the table.  
 a) set      b) put      c) eat      d) sweep
- 10- In the evening, most people wash ..... after they eat.  
 a) in      b) at      c) up      d) of
- 11- When you get up in the morning, you have to ..... your bed.  
 a) set      b) put      c) make      d) sweep
- 12- Some people ..... the floor every day so that it is always clean.  
 a) set      b) put      c) make      d) sweep
- 13- I'm doing a ..... about jobs in the house.  
 a) survey      b) box      c) bag      d) time
- 14- After washing the dishes, ..... them.  
 a) try      b) dry      c) fry      d) cry
- 15- Policemen wear a white .....  
 a) uniform      b) dress      c) skirt      d) T-shirt
- 16- Thank you ..... answering my questions.  
 a) have      b) has      c) had      d) having
- 17- My sister always ..... the table.  
 a) sweeps      b) sets      c) washes up      d) makes

- 18- You .....read quietly in the library.  
 a) don't have to    b) have to    c) has to    d) have been
- 19- I did a ..... about schools in Egypt .  
 a) plan    b) service    c) survey    d) book
- 20- Aya ..... make her bed every day.  
 a) don't have to    b) have to    c) has to    d) hasn't to
- 21- Children ..... six can go to primary school.  
 a) aging    b) ages    c) aged    d) are aging

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- You have to make your homework. (.....)
- 2- You have to buy food when you go to a market. (.....)
- 3- You don't have to go to university if you want to be a doctor. (.....)
- 4- After you wash up, you have to wet the dishes. (.....)
- 5- Primary school begins at the age of four. (.....)
- 6- She went to the kitchen to make the washing. (.....)
- 7- She doesn't has to help us. (.....)
- 8- I most finish my work on time . (.....)
- 9- Could you tell me weather you go to bed early or not ? (.....)
- 10- The opposite of friendly is infriendly. (.....)
- 11- Most students practice sports and music. (.....)

**Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Hossam and Ali are brothers, but they are different in everything. Hossam always helps his mother with the housework. When Hossam gets up, he quickly makes his bed. Then, he goes to the kitchen to help his mother prepare breakfast. Before they eat, Hossam sets the table. When they finish eating, he washes up and dries the dishes- Moreover, he sweeps the floor instead of his mother. On the other hand, Ali gets up and waits until they prepare breakfast, He never makes his bed. He never sets the table. He does nothing at home. As result their parents like Hossam more than Ali.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What does Hossam do after he gets up?
- .....

- 2- What does Hossam help his mother with?
- .....

- 3- Which do you think is better; Hossam or Ali?
- .....

**B- Choose the correct answer from a b c o r d :**

- 4- ..... never prepares breakfast with his mother.  
 a. Ali    b. Hossam    c. Hala    d. Huda
- 5- The underlined word "their" refers to .....  
 a. father and mother    b. Hossam    c. Ali    d. Ali and Hossam

Unit  
15

## Our earth

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

cause	يسبب	caused by	يحدث بواسطة
cause pollution	يسبب التلوث	floods	فيضانات
burn	يحرق/يحترق	breathe	يتنفس
produce	ينتج	happen	يحدث
breathe in	يستنشق	Arctic	المنطقة القطبية الشمالية
oxygen	أكسجين	Antarctica	المنطقة القطبية الجنوبية
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	problem	مشكلة
fuel	وقود	diagram	رسم توضيحي
melt	يذوب	feel ill	يشعر بالمرض
temperature	حرارة	air	هواء
natural gas	غاز طبيعي	find it difficult	يجدها صعبة
increase≠decrease	يزيد≠ينقص	science teacher	مدرس علوم
global warming	الإحتباس الحراري	good for	جيد لـ
contain	يحتوى على	pass	يمرر
environment	بيئة	windy	عاصف
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	tower bridge	جسر البرج
gas / gases	غاز/غازات	the Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين
extra	إضافي	family party	حفلة عائلي
pollute	يلوث	dry places	أماكن جافة
pollution	تلوث	petrol	بنزين
desert	صحراء	the Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
crops	محاصيل	earth	الكرة الأرضية
factory	مصنع	science magazine	مجلة علوم

## Confusing Words

burn	يحرق	warming	احتباس	pollution	تلوث	Petrol	بنزين
barn	حظيرة	warning	تحذير	population	سكان	Oil	بترول خام

## Prepositions &amp; Expressions

breathe in	يستنشق	get hotter	يزداد سخونة
cut down	يقطع	get higher	يرتفع
consist of	يتكون من	get a new job	يحصل على وظيف جديدة

contain	يحتوى على ( مكوناته )	stay inside	يبقى بالداخل
on the earth	على الارض	go out	يخرج من
because of	بسبب	around the earth	حول الارض
more than usual	اكثر من المعتاد	come from	يأتى من
are/is called	يُدعى / يُسمى	move to	ينتقل الى
difficult for us	صعب بالنسبة لنا	good for	مفيد ل
at the end of	في نهاية	pass the test	يجتاز إختبار

## Opposites

natural	طبيعي	unnatural	غير طبيعي	increase	يزيد	decrease	يقل
liquid	سائل	solid	صلب	breathe in	يستنشق	breath out	يخرج الهواء

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

burn	يحرق	burned	burned	catch	يمسك	caught	caught
		burnt	burnt				
become	يصبح	became	became	grow	يزرع	grew	grown

## Definitions

<b>Fuels</b>	وقود	things you can burn
<b>carbon dioxide</b>	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	a gas that trees breathe in
<b>Petrol</b>	البنزين	the fuel that most cars use
<b>global warming</b>	الإحتباس الحراري	happens when the earth gets too hot
<b>Atmosphere</b>	الغلاف الجوي	the air around the earth

## Language Notes

**Breathe** يتنفس (فعل)

⇒ I can't breathe under water.

**Breath** نفس (اسم)

⇒ How long can you hold your breath under water?

**Breathe in** يستنشق

⇒ we need to plant more trees, because trees breathe in carbon dioxide.

**Breathe out** يخرج الهواء (زفير)

⇒ Trees breathe in carbon dioxide and breathe out oxygen.

**One of + جمع + فعل مفرد** واحد من

⇒ One of these gases is carbon dioxide.

# Reading

## Global warming

This week, Mr Mohsen, a science teacher, explains global warming to us.

The atmosphere is the air around the earth. This contains different gases. One of these is carbon dioxide. Although it is a natural gas, it can also be caused by pollution. Pollution from cars and factories produces extra carbon dioxide. This is a problem. If there is too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, the temperature on the earth will increase. This is called global warming. If the earth gets hotter, the ice in the Arctic and Antarctica will melt more quickly. The sea will get higher and this will cause floods. Dry places will become deserts. If these places become deserts, crops will not be able to grow. If we don't have crops for food, it will become very difficult for us to live. So what can we do about the problem?

First, we need to plant more trees, because these breathe in carbon dioxide. We are cutting down too many trees. We also need to find fuels that cause less pollution.

## The First Conditional

التكوين:

مصدر will / won't + inf. فاعل , مضارع بسيط If /When+

If /When { مصدر / مصدر  
 will / won't + inf. مصدر فاعل ,  
 don't/doesn't مصدر  
 فعل الشرط جواب الشرط

- ✓ If / When it rains , I will stay at home.
- ✓ if you don't have breakfast, you will be hungry.
- ✓ If Mona is slow, she won't catch the bus.
- ✓ If he doesn't listen, he will not understand the lesson.

الإستخدام:

يعبر النوع الاول من الجمل الشرطية عن شئ محتمل الحدوث في المستقبل او عند التنبؤ او عند الوعد

- ✓ If Ali studies hard, he will pass his test.
- ✓ If Hamdi goes to university, he will get a good job.

- ✓ If Mona is quick, she will catch the bus.
- ✓ If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.
- ✓ If you go to London, you will see Tower Bridge.
- ✓ If Waleed reads this book, he will learn about the Ancient Egyptians.
- ✓ If they don't buy tickets, they will not see the tennis match.
- ✓ If I see Hassan, I will tell him about our family party.
- ✓ If you don't listen, you will not understand the lesson.
- ✓ If I finish my homework early, I will play tennis with my brother.
- ✓ If my mother's tired tonight, I will cook dinner.
- ✓ If you phone me tonight, we will talk about school.
- ✓ If you go to Paris, you will see the Eiffel Tower.
- ✓ If you want to see the doctor, you will have to wait.
- ✓ If you eat too many sweets, you'll have bad teeth.
- ✓ If Mr Tarek is ill, Mr Ahmed will teach the lesson
- ✓ If you phone this number, you will speak to the manager.
- ✓ If the tourists go to Giza, they will see the Pyramids
- ✓ If you go to that restaurant, you'll have a really good lunch
- ✓ If Karim forgets his glasses, he won't be able to read.

يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بجواب الشرط

- ✓ you'll have bad teeth if you eat too many sweets.
- ✓ Ali will pass his test if he studies hard.
- ✓ Tarek will be cold if he goes out without his jacket.
- ✓ Hala will not go to work if she feels ill tomorrow.
- ✓ Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

### Yes , No questions :

Will + فاعل + مصدر if + مضارع بسيط .....?

Yes, ضمير will. / No, ضمير won't

- Will you see the Eiffel Tower if you go to Paris?

⇒ Yes, I will./ No, I won't.

### Wh questions :

.....? مضارع بسيط if+ مصدر + فاعل will اداة استفهام

..... مضارع بسيط if+ الإجابة مصدر + will فاعل

- What will you see if you go to Paris?  
⇒ I will see the Eiffel Tower if I go to Paris?
- What will you do if it is hot tomorrow?  
⇒ I'll stay home if it is hot tomorrow.

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**Hamed and marwan are talking about nature.**

- Hamed :** What are the natural (1)..... you know?  
**Marwan:** oxygen, nitrogen and (2) ..... dioxide  
**Hamed :** (3)..... is the most important gas for human?  
**Marwan:** it's oxygen .  
**Hamed :** how do people get the oxygen gas they (4)..... from?  
**Marwan :** from plants.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:**

- 1- If we..... to England, we will speak English every day.  
a) went                      b) will go                      c) go                      d) going
- 2- They..... a lot of old statues if they go to that museum.  
a) see                      b) saw                      c) to see                      d) will see
- 3- If you..... your hands before you eat, you will get ill.  
a) don't wash                      b) wash                      c) not wash                      d) didn't wash
- 4- The air around the earth is called.....  
a) desertification                      b) the atmosphere                      c) environment                      d) global warming
- 5- Global warming happens when the earth gets too.....  
a) cold                      b) hot                      c) windy                      d) stormy
- 6- Carbon dioxide is a..... that trees breathe in  
a) fuel                      b) smoke                      c) gas                      d) soil
- 7- Petrol is the..... that most cars use  
a) fuel                      b) smoke                      c) gas                      d) fool
- 8- the temperature on the earth.....due to carbon dioxide.  
a) decreases                      b) reduces                      c) produces                      d) increases
- 9- if the earth gets hotter, the ice in the arctic and Antarctica.....  
a) flies                      b) floats                      c) waves                      d) melts
- 10- carbon dioxide is a/an.....gas.  
a) usual                      b) natural                      c) normal                      d) unusal
- 11- ..... is very bad for the environment.  
a) The desert                      b) Atmosphere                      c) Oxygen                      d) Pollution
- 12- If I see Ranya, I..... her what happened.  
a) 'll tell                      b) 'd tell                      c) 've told                      d) told
- 13- What..... if you get up late ?  
a) will do                      b) would do                      c) will you do                      d) you will do

- 14- If you read this book, you'll..... more about Cairo.  
 a) learn                      b) to learn                      c) learning                      d) learnt
- 15- If it..... hot, I won't go out.  
 a) 'll be                      b) be                      c) is                      d) was
- 16- She will win the game if she ..... well.  
 a) play                      b) played                      c) plays                      d) playing
- 17- You won't catch the bus if you..... late.  
 a) get up                      b) gets up                      c) getting up                      d) got up
- 18- If your sister..... hard, she will get low marks.  
 a) studies                      b) studied                      c) don't study                      d) doesn't study
- 19- Your teacher will be angry if you ..... your homework.  
 a) does                      b) did                      c) do                      d) don't do
- 20- ..... and visit you if I finish my homework.  
 a) come                      b) 'll come                      c) 'd come                      d) 've come
- 21- If it rains heavily tomorrow, I..... out.  
 a) will go                      b) won't go                      c) would go                      d) can go
- 22- Youssef..... Tower Bridge if he goes to London.  
 a)'ll see                      b) see                      c) saw                      d) sees
- 23- What ..... if you go to Paris?  
 a) you'll see                      b) you see                      c) will you see                      d) do you see

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- If you go to Paris, you see the Eiffel Tower. ( ..... )
- 2- Hala not go to work if she feels ill tomorrow. ( ..... )
- 3- Tarek will be cold if he will go out without his jacket. ( ..... )
- 4- Trees breath in carbon dioxide. ( ..... )
- 5- Global warning happens when the earth gets too hot. ( ..... )
- 6- Arctic is in the far south of the earth. ( ..... )
- 7- If you want to see a doctor, you having to wait. ( ..... )
- 8- My brother works in a big laboratory for making cars. ( ..... )
- 9- Where will you go if you felt sick ? ( ..... )
- 10- Do you go to Alexandria if you have a holiday ? ( ..... )
- 11- If these places became deserts, crops won't be able to grow. ( ..... )
- 12- My sister would see a doctor if she is sick. ( ..... )
- 13- If I saw Dina, I'll tell her about the party. ( ..... )

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&amp;4

desertification	التصحّر	petrol	بنزين
condensation	التكثيف	as well as	بالاضافة - بالمثل
seed	بذرة	percent	نسبة مئوية
roots	جذور	nature	طبيعة
soil	تربة	process	عملية
reason	سبب	land	أرض
Leaf leaves	ورقة شجر اوراق شجر	spring	الربيع
protect	يحمي	growth	نمو
energy	طاقة	plan	يخطط
Heat	حرارة - يسخن	ENO (Environment Online)	مدرسة وشبكة عالمية للتنمية المستدامة
rain forests	غابات مطيرة	carry away	يحمل بعيداً
anymore	بعد الآن/لم يعد	continue	يستمر - يكمل
even	حتى	warm water	ماء دافئ
quantity	كمية	More than	أكثر من
quantities	كميات	Less than	أقل من
large	كبير الحجم	worse	أسوأ
date	تاريخ	half	نصف
International	دولي-عالمي	third	ثلث
tree planting day	يوم زراعة الأشجار	quarter	ربع
area	منطقة	fifth	خمس
jatropha	نبات الجاتروفا	sixth	سدس
population	سكان	piece	قطعة
recycle	يعيد تدوير/يعيد إستخدام	oil	زيت

## Confusing Words

Plan	يخطط/خطة	soil	تربة زراعية	recycle	يعيد تدوير	leaf	ورقة شجر	piece	قطعة
plane	طائرة	sail	يبحر	cycle	يركب دراجة	leave	يترك/يغادر	peace	سلام

## Prepositions &amp; Expressions

cut off	يفصل/يقطع	It is best to + inf.	من الافضل ان
two thirds	ثلثي	stop ... by	يتوقف عن طريق
one sixth of	سدس	as you know	كما تعلم

popular with	شائع بين / محبوب لدى	two percent of...	اثنان في المائة
keep water	يحتفظ بالماء	more than half	أكثر من النصف
save energy	يوفر طاقة	put into	يغرس/يضع داخل
have a three - minute shower	يستحم لمدة 3 دقائق	help to stop desertification	يساعد في منع التصحّر
burn fuel for energy	يحرق وقود من أجل الطاقة	why don't we + inf.. ?	لما لا
look after	يعتني بـ	all over the world	حول العالم
take+(time)	يستغرق وقت	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
in this way	وبهذه الطريقة	use for	يستخدم لـ
in danger	في خطر	instead of	بدلاً من
become drier	يصبح أكثر جفافاً	in danger	في خطر

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

take	يأخذ	took	took	forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
grow	يزرع	grew	grown	catch	يمسك/يلحق	caught	caught
keep	يحفظ-يربي	kept	kept	build	يبني	built	built

## Opposites

popular	محبوب/شائع	unpopular	غير محبوب	warm	دافئ	cool	بارد
worse	أسوأ	better	أفضل	far	بعيد	near	قريب

## Definitions

leaf	ورقة شجر	a tree uses this to breathe through
roots	جذور	a tree uses these to drink water
seeds	بذور	new plants come from these
desertification	التصحّر	the process by which land becomes a desert
jatropha	شجر جاتروفا	plants that have big green leaves and can grow in very dry soil

## Language Notes

**It is best/better to + inf.** من الأفضل أن

**لإعطاء النصيحة**

**Try to + inf.** حاول أن

⇒ It's best/better to use warm water instead of very hot water.

⇒ Try to save energy at home. try to have shorter showers.

**as well as+ v ing/اسم** بالإضافة إلى

## Tapescript



### Listen to a science teacher and check your answers:

#### **Teacher:**

Today we're going to talk about how to protect the environment. Most of us know that global warming is one of the biggest problems for our world. Most global warming is caused when we burn fuel for energy. So if we save energy, we'll also help to stop global warming. Try to save energy at home. About one sixth of the energy we use is to heat water, so try to use less hot water. When we wash our clothes, it's better to use warm water instead of very hot water. Also, try to have shorter showers. Most showers take about eight minutes. In a three-minute shower, more than half the energy is saved. Another thing people can do to help the environment is to plant trees. As you know, trees breathe in carbon dioxide. We need more trees. About two percent of the earth has rainforests, but people are cutting down trees in rainforests every day. Two thirds of the earth's rainforests are not there anymore. And it's not just rainforests that are in danger. We are cutting down trees and plants all over the world, even in Egypt. So, why don't we plan a day to plant trees!

### Desertification

**Plants and trees are good for farmers. Their roots help to keep water in the soil. So what happens if we do not have trees or plants?**

- If we cut down the plants and trees (for example to build houses or to keep animals), the soil will become drier. Wind and rain can carry the soil away. If this continues for a long time, desertification happens. This means that the area becomes a desert.
- About 16 percent of the world's people live with the problem of desertification. To help stop it, farmers around the world are planting more trees in dry areas.
- In the Luxor area, farmers are helping to stop desertification by growing plants called Jatropha. These plants have big green leaves and they can grow in very dry soil. They are very easy to grow. If a piece of a plant is cut off and put into the soil, a new plant grows.
- The seeds of the plants contain oil. It can be used as a fuel which causes less pollution than petrol. In this way, the Jatropha plant protects the environment, as well as the soil.

## Language Notes

### التحدث عن الكميات Talking about quantities

- 1- one third ثلث      one quarter ربع      one fifth خمس      one sixth سدس  
two third ثلثي      three quarters ثلاثة أرباع
- 2- more than half أكثر من النصف      less than half أقل من النصف
- 3- ..... percent في المائة

- ⇒ About **one sixth of** the energy we use heats water
- ⇒ **Two thirds of** our rainforests are not there anymore.
- ⇒ About **two thirds of** the students in my class live in my village
- ⇒ **More / Less than half** the energy is saved
- ⇒ About **two percent of** the earth has rainforests.
- ⇒ More than **90 percent** of Egypt's area is desert.
- ⇒ **15%** of the students use cotton bags.

### Show that something is an opinion, not a fact.

-نستخدم هذه العبارات لتوضيح رأي وليس حقيقة

- In my opinion,
- I believe (that)
- I think (that)
- I feel (that)

فعل + فاعل

في رأيي ،  
أعتقد أن  
أعتقد أن  
أشعر أن

- In my opinion, people waste a lot of water
- I believe (that) we can all help to stop pollution.
- I think (that) global warming is a big problem in the world.
- I feel (that) we could all recycle more.

للسؤال عن الرأي نستخدم **What do you think of/about.....?**

- **What do you think of global warming?**  
⇒ I think (that) global warming is a big problem in the world.

### Complete the following dialogue:

**Omar and lamia are talking about pollution**

**Omar :** where does pollution come from?

**Lamia:** it may come from cars and (1).....

**Omar :** Is it dangerous to the (2) .....

**Lamia:** Of course, this may kill plants.

**Omar :** (3) ..... can we stop pollution?

**Lamia:** by (4)..... more trees to take in carbon dioxide and give out oxygen.

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1- **Kamal:** How much of the earth is sea?

**Omar :** About 30 percent of the earth is land, .....

2- **Osama:** .....

**Hady :** About a third of the land is desert.

3- **Ahmed:** What will happen if we cut down too many trees?

**Basmalla:** .....

4- **Amir:** do you think plants and trees are good for the atmosphere?

**Body:** .....

5-**Ayat:** what causes global warming?

**Esraa:** .....

6- **Adel :** what do you think of global warming?

**Rafaat :** .....

7-**Omar:** How much of land on the earth is rainforests?

**Ziad :** .....

8- **Mona :** .....

**Rahma :** If the earth gets hotter, the ice in the Arctic and Antarctica will melt more quickly.

9- **Kamal:** How much of land on the earth is desert?

**Omar :** .....

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- ..... the process by which land becomes a desert.

a) pollution      b) desertification      c) population      d)condensation

2- the.....of the plant grow down into the soil.

a) roots      b) leaves      c) fruits      d) seeds

3- to grow plants, farmers put the .....into the soil and water them.

a) roots      b) leaves      c) fruits      d) seeds

4- What..... desertification?

a) sticks      b) achieves      c) results      d) causes

5- If we cut down trees and plants, it will ..... desertification

a) stop      b) protect      c) save      d) cause

6- Two ..... of our rainforests are not there anymore.

a) three      b)third      c) thirds      d) first

7- the seeds of jatropa plants.....oil

a) present      b) include      c) contain      d) introduce

- 8- Cutting down trees causes.....  
 a) evaporation      b) desertification      c) condensation      d) pollution
- 9- The factory makes cars using computers and .....  
 a) dyes                      b) caves                      c) machines                      d) bats

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- Cutting down trees causes condensation. ( ..... )
- 2- In autumn, roots on trees turn yellow or orange. ( ..... )
- 3- Our factory introduces fantastic goods. ( ..... )
- 4- I sink that global warming is a bad problem. ( ..... )
- 5- we should look for our environment. ( ..... )
- 6- Cutting trees and plants stop desertification. ( ..... )

**W.B. Practice test (5a)**

**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1- Why is Amal asking questions?  
 a- for a project      b- for her work      c- for her friends      d- for a party
- 2- Where do they make the carpets?  
 a- at a craft centre      b- in a factory      c- in Europe      d- on a farm
- 3- How many carpets do they sell in Egypt?  
 a- less than a third      b- about a third      c- more than half      d- all of them

**2- Listen and answer the following questions:**

1- Who did the girl speak to yesterday?

.....

2- Where is he staying?

.....

3- What did he say that he had to do?

.....

**3- Complete the following dialogue:**

**Taha and Hamza are talking about Hamza's trip to England.**

**Taha :** Hi, Hamza. Did you have a good holiday in England?

**Hamza:** Yes, I enjoyed it, (1) ..... it wasn't my best holiday.

**Taha :** Why was that?

**Hamza:** The (2) ..... is, the weather was very bad every day.

**Taha :** I'd love to go to England! Sorry, you were saying (3) ..... the weather.

**Hamza:** Yes, it was cold and windy! (4) ....., it was good to practise my English.



**B). Answer the following questions:**

1- Why do you think that Holmes hit the ground with his walking stick?

.....

2- Which of the places near the shop do you think a thief would be interested in?

.....

**7- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- Walid phoned me this morning and he said that he ..... on a farm.  
 a- is staying                      b- was staying                      c- stay                      d- to stay
- 2- The plane leaves early tomorrow morning so Ola ..... get up at 4 a.m.!  
 a- have to                      b- have                      c- has to                      d- has
- 3- It is cloudy today, so we ..... take our sunglasses.  
 a- don't have to                      b- not have to                      c- don't have                      d- have not to
- 4- If we ..... to England, we will speak English every day.  
 a- went                      b- will go                      c- go                      d- going
- 5- The tourists followed a ..... through the mountains.  
 a- path                      b- step                      c- part                      d- scenery
- 6- After they ate breakfast, the children helped their mother to .....  
 a- wash in                      b- wash on                      c- wash up                      d- wash off
- 7- What ..... Desertification?  
 a- sticks                      b- achieves                      c- results                      d- causes
- 8- Please ..... me to buy some bread from the shops.  
 a- revise                      b- remind                      c- remember                      d- decide

**8- Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- He told that he wanted to play chess. (.....)
- 2- You have look right and left when you cross the road. (.....)
- 3- I have an excellent teacher at school, so I don't need any public lessons. (.....)
- 4- It's raining very hard, so it is impossible for me to take an umbrella. (.....)

**Write a paragraph of about 90 words on:**

**What you have to do before you go to school**

# W.B. Practice test (5b)

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1- Who talks about their project first?

a- Ali

b- Ahmed

c- Tarek

d- Tarek and Ali

2- What was their project about?

a- where students lived

b- students' hobbies

c- transport

d- classrooms

3- How many students live 2 km. or more from the school?

a- more than a third

b- about two thirds

c- less than a third

d- a third

## 2- Listen and answer the following questions:

1- What did the scientists say about the earth?

2- Where were the scientists from?

3- What did the scientists say we have to do?

## Complete the following dialogue:

Samira is asking Rawan some questions about a school project.

**Samira:** (1) ..... me. I'm doing a school project about jobs which people do at home. Can I ask you some questions?

**Rawan:** Yes, of (2) .....

**Samira:** Could you tell me (3) ..... you make your bed every day?

**Rawan:** Yes, I do.

**Samira:** OK, and do you sweep the floor?

**Rawan:** Well, no, I don't sweep the floor often. I mean, I sweep the floor (4) ....., when my mother wants me to help.

## 4- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues:

1) **Amira:** .....

**Heidi:** Not all all.

2) **Kamal:** How much of land on the earth is desert?

**Omar:** .....

## 5- Read the following, then answer the questions :

About 71 percent of the earth is ocean. That means that less than a third of the earth is land for us to live on. However, scientists think that nearly half of the land has people living or working on it. Many animals have to live on the ten percent of the land that is far from any large city.

There are now 34 cities around the world that have a population of more than ten million. Many of us live in big cities. However, they use just three percent of the land area. The earth has millions of people living on it, but it is not yet full!

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1- What does the underlined word ocean mean?

.....

2- What is the problem for some animals?

.....

3- What percent of the land has people living or working on it?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

4- 34 cities around the world .....

- a- have more than ten million people
- b- are empty
- c- have too many people in them
- d- are full

5- What is the main subject of the article?

- b- One day, people will need to live in the sea.
- b- There is not enough land.
- c- In the future, there will be no animals.
- d- There is enough land for us all.

**D- The Reader (6M)**

**A). Match column (A) with column (B):**

1- Mr Holmes	a- went to a concert with Holmes
2- Mr. Wilson	b- worked for the Red-Headed League for eight weeks.
3- Mr. Ross	c- was waiting for Mr Wilson at the office.
4- Mr Spaulding	d- was Mr Wilson's assistant.
	e- tried to solve the mystery of the Red-Headed League.

**B). Answer the following questions:**

1-Why do you think that Mr. Wilson found his work foolish?

.....

2-How do we know that Dr Watson doesn't understand what Holmes is thinking?

.....

**7- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4M)**

1- They ..... a lot of old statues if they go to that museum.

- a- see
- b- saw
- c- to see
- d- will see

2- If you ..... your hands before you eat, you will get ill.

- a- don't wash
- b- wash
- c- not wash
- d- didn't wash

3- You ..... be careful when you walk in the desert.

- a- have to
- b- has to
- c- have
- d- has

4- The teacher said ..... it was a difficult lesson.

- a- to
- b- if
- c- that
- d- which

5- We looked out of the train windows to see the beautiful .....

- a- surveys**
- b- flight**
- c- walk**
- d- scenery**

6- The factory makes cars using computers and .....

- a- dyes**
- b- caves**
- c- machines**
- d- bats**

7- The camel had a broken leg, so the farmer took it to see a .....

- a- dentist**
- b- patient**
- c- weaver**
- d- vet**

8- Please can you ..... the table before we eat?

- a- set**
- b- wash up**
- c- weave**
- d- group**

**8- Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- Cutting down trees causes condensation. (.....)
- 2- We not have to go to school tomorrow because it's a holiday. (.....)
- 3- She looked out of the window and said that it is raining. (.....)
- 4- In autumn, roots on trees turn yellow or orange. (.....)

**Write an e-mail of 90 words**

To your best friend Azza telling her what will happen if she comes to your house on Friday. Your name is Gamila. Your email address is gamila@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Azza and her email address is azza@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit  
16

## The water cycle

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

condensation	التكثيف	Africa	أفريقيا
evaporation	التبخير	Asia	آسيا
water vapour=steam	بخار الماء	wind	الرياح
evaporate	يتبخر	recycle	يعيد تدوير
Water cycle	دورة الماء	form	يكون-يشكل
soil	تربة	clouds	سحب-غيوم
blow	يهب	snow	جليد
drop	قطرة - يُسقط	white tigers	النمور البيضاء
cause	سبب-يسبب	rain	مطر
Water drops	قطرات الماء	rice	أرز
join	ينضم-يلتحق	channel	قناة
Form ed	يتكون	tennis composition	مسابقة تنس
change	يغير/يتغير	Degrees Celsius	درجات مئوية
cause	يسبب/سبب	mountain	جبل
move	يتحرك	petrol	بنزين
nature	الطبيعة	lake	بحيرة
liquid	سائل	river	نهر
TV programme	برنامج تليفزيوني	however	بالرغم من
car window	نافذة السيارة	weather	الطقس
ground	الأرض	nature	الطبيعة
height	إرتفاع	billion	بليون
nothing	لا شيء	By nature	طبيعيًا/بواسطة الطبيعة
language	لغة	correct order	ترتيب صحيح
language	لغة	correct order	ترتيب صحيح

## Continents قارات

Africa	أفريقيا	Asia	آسيا	Europe	أوروبا	South America	أمريكا الجنوبية
--------	---------	------	------	--------	--------	---------------	-----------------

## Countries

India	الهند	Germany	ألمانيا	Scotland	اسكتلندا	China	الصين
England	انجلترا	South Africa	جنوب أفريقيا	France	فرنسا	The Ivory Coast	ساحل العاج

## Confusing Words

Channel canal	قناة تلفزيون قناة مائية	drop drip	قطرة ينقط	blew blue	هبت ازرق	recycle cycle	يعيد تصنيع دورة
------------------	----------------------------	--------------	--------------	--------------	-------------	------------------	--------------------

## Prepositions & Expressions

change into= turn into	يتحول الى	in the correct order	ترتيب صحيح
turn from ... into / to	يتحول من ... الى	at the top of	في قمة
recycled by nature	يعاد تدويرها عن طريق الطبيعة	become cooler	يصبح اكثر برودة
move up into the air	يتصاعد في الهواء لاعلى	fall to the ground	يسقط على الارض
form clouds	يكون سحب	fall through	يسقط خلال
become cooler	يصبح ابرد	fall down from	يتساقط من
join together	يتحد سويا / يرتبط ببعضه	move around	يتجول
carry from ...into	يحمل من .. الى	on the inside of	على السطح الداخلى من

## Opposites

important	مهم	unimportant	غير مهم	heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
liquid	سائل	solid	صلب	condensation	التكثيف	evaporation	التبخير

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

blow	يهب	blew	blown	mean	يعنى	meant	meant
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen	freeze	يتجمد	froze	frozen
feel	يشعر	felt	felt	teach	يعلم	taught	taught
rise	يرتفع / تشرق الشمس	rose	risen	shine	يلمع / تشرق الشمس	shone	shone

## Definitions

Evaporation	التبخير	turning water into water vapour
Condensation	التكثف	turning water vapour into water
Water vapour	بخار الماء	this means that water is turned from a liquid into gas
Snow	جليد	when it is very cold, water drops turn into ice and fall to the ground
join	يلتحق / ينضم	Move together and become part of something
blow	تهب	Move using air or wind
The water cycle	دورة الماء	when water moves around the earth all the time, it is recycled by nature

## Language Notes

**cause+ ..... to+inf.** **يسبب**

⇒ The sun **causes** the water in rivers, lakes and the sea **to** evaporate.

**Be caused by** **يحدث بواسطة**

⇒ The fire was caused by cigarettes.

**change into** **يتحول إلى = يتغير إلى**

⇒ Water turns/ changes into ice in the freezer.

## Reading

### *The water cycle*

**Water moves around the earth all the time: it is recycled by nature. This is called the water cycle. So what happens?.**

#### **1. What is evaporation?**

When the sun shines, it causes the water in rivers, lakes and the sea to evaporate. This means that water is turned from a liquid into a gas. This gas is called water vapour.

#### **2. What is condensation caused by?**

As the water vapour moves up into the air, it becomes cooler. The water vapour changes into very small drops of water. This is called condensation. You can sometimes see condensation on the inside of a window.

#### **3. How are clouds formed?**

In the sky, these small drops of water are blown together by the wind. When billions of the small drops join together, they form clouds.

#### **4. How is rain made?**

If the drops are very big and heavy, they fall through the clouds to the ground. This is rain.

#### **5. How is snow made?**

Water drops do not always become rain. When it is very cold, water drops turn into ice and fall to the ground. This is snow.

## Tapescript

### Narrator One

**Boy 1 :** Where is rice grown ?

**Boy 2 :** It's grown in India.

### Narrator Two

**Girl 1 :** Where are white tigers found ?

**Girl 2 :** They're found in Asia,

### Narrator Three

**Boy 1 :** What is petrol made from ?

**Boy 2 :** It's made from oil.

### Narrator Four

**Girl 1 :** How many languages are spoken in South Africa ?

**Girl 2 :** Eleven languages are spoken in South Africa.

### Narrator Five

**Boy 1 :** How is water carried from soil into a plant ?

**Boy 2 :** It is carried into the plant by the roots.

## Tapescript

### Narrator One

**Voice 1:** Where are Jatropha plants grown for fuel ?

**Voice 2:** Jatropha plants are grown for fuel in Egypt.

### Narrator Two

**Voice 1:** About how many cars are bought in China each year ?

**Voice 2:** About 20 million cars are bought in China each year.

### Narrator Three

**Voice 1:** Which language is spoken most in the Ivory Coast ?

**Voice 2:** French is spoken most in the Ivory Coast.

### Narrator Four

**Voice 1:** What is put into most cups of tea in England ?

**Voice 2:** Milk is put into most cups of tea in England.

### Narrator Five

**Voice 1:** How many bananas do you think are eaten by the players during The Wimbledon tennis competition in London ?

**Voice 2:** 23,000 bananas are eaten by the players during the competition!

**Voice :** You probably know that ice is made when it is zero degrees Celsius. However, did you know that you can find ice at the top of mountains even in the summer ? We all know that clouds are moved by the wind, but did you know that some clouds are formed at a height of 2,000 metres ?

### المجهول في المضارع البسيط Present Simple Passive Questions

نستخدم المجهول عندما يكون الحدث ( الفعل ) أهم من الفاعل أو أن نكون لا نعرف من قام بالفعل (الفاعل) لتحويل من العلوم للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط نتبع الأتي:

- 1- نحدد الفاعل والفعل والمفعول
- 2- نحدد الزمن ( مضارع بسيط - ماضي بسيط ..... )
- 3- نضع المفعول في بداية الجملة (يصبح فاعل)
- 4- نضع am/is/are قبل الفعل الذي نقوم بتحويله إلى التصريف الثالث
- 5- نضع الفاعل في آخر الجملة مسبقاً بكلمة by يمكن الإستغناء عن هذه الخطوة.

فاعل + am/is/are (not)+ P.P. + مفعول

- ⇒ Water is recycled by nature.
- ⇒ Clouds are formed in the sky.
- ⇒ Rice isn't grown in England.
- ⇒ Clouds are blown by the wind.
- ⇒ Petrol is made from oil.
- ⇒ white tigers are found in Asia.
- ⇒ Eleven languages are spoken in South Africa.
- ⇒ Ice is made at zero degrees C.
- ⇒ Some clouds are formed at a height of 2,000 metres.
- ⇒ Jatropha plants are grown for fuel in Egypt
- ⇒ About 20 million cars are bought in China each year.
- ⇒ Air is moved up by mountains.

سؤال بمعنى هل:

Am/is /are + مفعول + p.p ?

Yes, ضمير am/is/are.

No, ضمير am not/ isn't/aren't .

- Is snow formed in the sky ?  
⇒ Yes, it is.
- Is condensation caused by the sun?  
⇒ No, it isn't.

سؤال بأداة إستفهام:

WH + am/is /are + مفعول + p.p ?  
مفعول + am/is/are (not)+ P.P.

- Where is rice grown ?  
⇒ It's grown in India.
- Where are white tigers found ?  
⇒ They're found in Asia,
- What is petrol made from ?  
⇒ It's made from oil.
- How many languages are spoken in South Africa ?  
⇒ Eleven languages are spoken in South Africa.
- How is water carried from soil into a plant ?  
⇒ It is carried into the plant by the roots.
- Where are Jatropha plants grown for fuel ?  
⇒ Jatropha plants are grown for fuel in Egypt.
- About how many cars are bought in China each year ?  
⇒ About 20 million cars are bought in China each year.
- Which language is spoken most in the Ivory Coast ?  
⇒ French is spoken most in the Ivory Coast.
- What is put into most cups of tea in England ?  
⇒ Milk is put into most cups of tea in England.
- How many bananas are eaten by the players during The Wimbledon tennis competition in London ?  
⇒ 23,000 bananas are eaten by the players during the competition!

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1- Adel : What is petrol made from?

Ahmed: .....

2- Jana : .....

Judy : Rice is grown in India.

3- Alaa: what is evaporation?

Maha: .....

4- Aly :What happens when you boil water?

Salem: .....

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- .....is when water turns to water vapour.  
a) Evaporation    b) Condensation    c) rain    d) wind
- 2- There is water on the inside of the car window this morning. This is.....  
a) condensation    b) evaporation    c) temperature    d) snow
- 3- When drops of water join together in the sky ,they form.....  
a) gas    b) wind    c) clouds    d) snow
- 4- At what temperature does water..... ?  
a) shine    b) drop    c) freeze    d) burn
- 5- Is evaporation..... by the sun ?  
a) cause    b) causes    c) caused    d) be caused
- 6- Clouds..... by the wind.  
a) blown    b) blow    c) is blown    d) are blown
- 7- Where is rice..... by farmers?  
a) grown    b) growing    c) grow    d) grows
- 8- How many languages..... in South Africa ?  
a) speaking    b) speak    c) spoke    d) are spoken
- 9- Do you know how rain .....?  
a) make    b) makes    c) is made    d) made
- 10- Our lunch..... by my mother every day.  
a) cooks    b) cooked    c) is cooking    d) is cooked
- 11- Are you all..... by the teacher ?  
a) examined    b) examine    c) examining    d) examines
- 12- Small drops of water..... together by the wind.  
a) are blown    b) blown    c) blow    d) blows
- 13- the teacher taught us about the water.....  
a) bicycle    b) cycle    c) circle    d) round
- 14- in evaporation water is turned from a.....into a gas.  
a) drop    b) vapor    c) liquid    d) cloud
- 15- when the sun shines ,some water in river and lakes.....  
a) recycles    b) condenses    c) causes    d) evaporates
- 16- When you go out in the sun, you should wear sun.....  
a) cream    b) drop    c) vapour    d) shine
- 17- In bad weather, the wind often ..... my hat onto the ground.  
a) Feels    b) falls    c) blows    d) drives
- 18- This room is always very hot when the sun.....  
a) evaporates    b) joins    c) shines    d) happens

- 19- ..... snow formed in the sky?  
 a) Were                      b) Are                      c) Have                      d) Is
- 20- What time was the tennis match..... on television last night?  
 a) show                      b) showing                      c) shown                      d) showed
- 21- The planes ..... after every journey.  
 a) cleaned                      b) was cleaned                      c) were cleaning                      d) are cleaned
- 22- How are cakes .....?  
 a) made                      b) make                      c) makes                      d) making
- 23- Young children do not usually..... letters together when they write.  
 a) blow                      b) drop                      c) join                      d) paint
- 24- .....happens When water vapour turns to small drops of water  
 a) condensation                      b) evaporation                      c) temperature                      d) snow

### Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- How is rain make ? ( ..... )
- 2- He is call Ayman. ( ..... )
- 3- Where is Ashraf invite ? ( ..... )
- 4- This photo was took by Adel. ( ..... )
- 5- Clouds don't form when there is no sun. ( ..... )
- 6- Water vapour is a liquid. ( ..... )
- 7- Water is cycled by nature. ( ..... )
- 8- How are clouds form ? ( ..... )
- 9- What are insects ate by? ( ..... )
- 10- When I felt a sea of water on my head, I knew it was going to rain. ( ..... )
- 11- My favourite TV programme is show on Channel 1. ( ..... )
- 12- When water vapour turns to small drops of water, this is evaporation.  
 ( ..... )

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&4

experiment	تجربة	skin	جلد
pour	يصب	temperature	درجة الحرارة
add	يضيف	sunhat	قبعة تحمي من الشمس
stir	يقلب	contain	يحتوى على
burn	يحرق	instructions	تعليمات
energy	طاقة	confirm	يؤكد
stir	يقلب	follow	يتبع
appear ≠ disappear	يظهر ≠ يختفي	guess	يخمن
fill	يملأ	net	شبكة
freezer	فريزر - مجمد	almost	تقريبا
sunshine	ضوء الشمس	thirsty	عطشان
sun cream	كريم واقي من الشمس	cloudy	مغيم

lid	غطاء	fires	حرائق
salt	ملح	tourists	سياح
cup	فنجان	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
fill	يملاً	clear	واضح
spoon	ملعقة	irrigate	يروي
check	يفحص-يراجع	safety	أمان
press	يضغط	advice	نصيحة
smoke	يدخن-دخان	dark ≠ light	غامق ≠ فاتح
bottle	زجاجة	advantages	مميزات
show	يوضح-يبين	disadvantages	عيوب

## Confusing Words

stir	يقلب	mean	يعني/يقصد	pour	يصب	Feel	يشعر	Advice	نصيحة
stare	يدقق النظر	main	أساسي	Poor	فقير	Fell	سقط	Advise	ينصح

## Prepositions & Expressions

do an experiment	يقوم بتجربة	Are you following me	هل تتابعني
for the first time	لأول مرة	Is it clear to you?	هل الامر واضح بالنسبة لك
stir ...into	يقلب في	That's right	هذا صحيح
stay out of the sun	يبعد عن اشمس	start fires	يشعل النيران
keep adding...	استمر في اضافة	good for	جيد أو مفيد ل
How interesting	!ياله من شئ شيق	the temperature falls	تهبط درجة الحرارة
pour... into	يصب في	irrigate farms	يروي الحقول
add ...to	يضيف ل	mix with	يختلط مع
add...into	يضيف...داخل	happen to	يحدث ل
feel thirsty	يشعر بالعطش	careful of	حريص بشأن
protect from	يحمى من	give instructions	يعطي تعليمات

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

freeze	يتجمد	froze	frozen	rise	تشرق	rose	risen
show	يعرض	showed	shown	feel	يشعر	felt	felt

## Language Notes:

**Keep+ v ing** أستمرفى

⇒ Keep adding more salt until it doesn't disappear any more.

**Outdoor+ أسم** بالخارج **outdoors** خارجى

⇒ Football is an outdoor game.

Football is played outdoors.

## Tapescript



### Listen to a teacher doing the experiment in a science class

**Teacher :** Now, we are going to do an experiment with water and salt. First, pour some water into two plastic cups. Fill the cups to about half way. Now, add some salt to one of the cups. Stir the salt into the water with a spoon.

**Boy 1 :** Do you mean like this? [water being stirred by a spoon]

**Teacher :** Good. As you stir the salt, it will disappear. Are you following me?

**Boy 2 :** Yes. I can't see it at all.

**Teacher :** Keep adding more salt until it doesn't disappear any more. Do you understand what I mean? You'll need quite a lot of salt – about a third of a cup. Now, put both cups in the freezer for three hours. [fade]

**Teacher :** OK, let's see what's happened to the water in each cup.

**Boy 1 :** Only one cup of water has become ice! The other cup hasn't changed at all.

**Teacher :** Yes, that's because when salt is added to water, it doesn't freeze at the same temperature. Water with salt in it has to be much colder to freeze. Is that clear to you?

**Boy 2 :** Yes, I see what you mean.

**Boy 1 :** Can I just check that I have understood correctly? Is that why the sea isn't usually frozen even in the winter, because the water contains salt?

**Teacher :** That's right.

**Boy 1 :** I understand! How interesting!

**Read about how clouds are formed on mountains**

Air usually contains water vapour which is blown by the wind. When this air meets a mountain, the air is moved up. When it moves up, the air becomes cooler and the water vapour condenses into water drops. The water drops join together to form clouds. That is why you often see clouds at the tops of mountains

**Sunshine ضوء الشمس**

**Talk about the advantages and disadvantages of life in a hot country.**

Egypt is a hot country. In July, there are almost 400 hours of sunshine in Cairo, Aswan and Siwa. Is this good or bad?

<b>Advantages</b> مميزات	<b>Disadvantages</b> عيوب
It gives you energy.	The sun can burn your skin
Tourists always like to visit Egypt because of the sunshine.	The sun can start fires.
It is good for plants so many crops and fruits grow here.	It is difficult for plants to grow if there is not enough water.
It is not usually cold !	If it is very hot, it can be difficult to play sports
gives energy tourists like it good for plants not often cold	can burn your skin can start fires but plants can't grow if no water difficult to play sports

**Checking understanding التأكد من استيعاب شيء****Checking that someone has understood التأكد من شخص قد فهم**

Do you understand what I mean? هل تفهم ما أعنيه؟

Are you following me? هل تتابعني ؟

Is this clear (to you)? هل هذا واضح؟

**Checking that you have understood التأكد من أنك قد فهمت**

Do you mean (like this)? هل تعني.....؟

Can I just check that I have understood correctly? ؟

هل يمكنني التأكد من أنني فهمت بشكل صحيح

**Confirming understanding تأكيد الفهم**

I see (what you mean). أفهم ما تقصده

I understand (what you mean). أفهم ما تقصده

**Teacher :** Put some water into a plastic bottle. Are you following me?

**Ahmed :** I see. / I understand.

**Jana :** Do you understand what I mean? /Are you following me?/Is this clear?

**Judy :** Yes, I understand.

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**Teacher:** Half fill a glass with water and add a lot of salt. Stir the water. **Are you following me?** Now carefully add fresh water to the glass. **Is that clear to you?**

**Girl :** **Can I just check** that I have understood correctly? **Do you mean** that the fresh water shouldn't mix with the salt water?

**Teacher:** Yes. Now carefully put an egg into the glass. What happens?

**Girl :** The egg floats in the middle of the glass.

**Teacher:** The egg is heavier than the fresh water, but lighter than the salt water.

**Girl :** **I understand.** How interesting!

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**Student :** How is the cloud formed in the bottle?

**Teacher:** I'll explain **what happens.** When you press the bottle, the temperature rises.

**Student :** **Do you mean that** it gets hotter?

**Teacher:** Yes. When you stop pressing the bottle, the temperature falls. **Is that clear to you?**

**Student :** **Yes, I see**

**Teacher:** This causes condensation. **Are you following me?**

**Student :** **Do you mean that** water drops form in the bottle?

**Teacher:** Yes, the water drops form on the smoke in the bottle. Do you understand what I mean

**Student :** Yes, I understand.

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**A student and a teacher are talking about the sun.**

**Student:** what was today's lesson about?

**Teacher:** it was about the sun.

**Student:** how is sunshine (1) ..... for us?

**Teacher:** it gives us (2) .....

**Student:** can the sun be (3) .....

**Teacher:** yes, because it can (4) ..... our skin

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**A girl is doing an experiment with her teacher.**

**Teacher:** Half fill a glass with water and add a lot of salt. Stir the water. Are you (1) ..... me?

**Girl :** Yes, I'm following you.

**Teacher:** Now, carefully add fresh water. Is that ( 2) ..... to you?

**Girl :** Can I just ....(3)..... that I have understood correctly? Do you (4) .....that the fresh water shouldn't mix with the salt water?

**Teacher :** Yes.

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :**

**1- Nadine:** Too much sun can be bad for you. Are you following me?

**Jana :** .....

**2- Ahmed:** It's not hot or cold today.....?

**Yasser:** Yes, I understand what you mean.

**3- Teacher :** Put some water into a plastic bottle. Are you following me?

**Boy :** .....

**4- Father :** .....

**Son :** Yes, I see.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- .....can be dangerous. the sun can burn your skin.

a) sunglasses    b) sun hat    c) sun cream    d) sunshine

2- .....are tests done by scientist to find out something.

a) experiences    b) experiments    c) equipment    d) earthquake

3- I can't find my pen! It has.....

a) stolen    b) evaporated    c) robbed    d) disappeared

4- salt disappears when you.....it in water.

a) stir    b) pour    c) disappear    d) melt

5- I don't understand what you.....

a) have    b) mean    c) know    d) check

6- the best colours to wear in hot weather are.....colours.

a) light    b) dark    c) green    d) red

7- How ore clouds .....?    When billions of water drops join together.

a) taken    b) done    c) called    d) formed

8- Young children do not usually..... letters together when they write.

a) blow    b) drop    c) join    d) paint

9- You can..... some ice to water as it's not cold.

a) need    b) take    c) add    d) form

- 10- ..... the sugar in the cup of tea before drinking it.  
 a) Stir                      b) Drop                      c) Take                      d) Follow
- 11- Our science teacher always asks us to do..... in the lab.  
 a) experiments    b) experiences    c) accidents                      d) problems
- 12- ..... can be dangerous. The sun can burn your skin.  
 a) Sunshine                      b) Waterfall                      c)TV                      d) Sun cream
- 13- We put food in the..... to keep it for a long time.  
 a) oven                      b) freezer                      c) cooker                      d) cupboard
- 14- ..... protects us from sunshine.  
 a) Toothpaste    b) Sun cream                      c) Cooking oil                      d) Shampoo
- 15- The sun can burn your.....  
 a) clothes                      b) hat                      c)skin                      d) shoes
- 16- After stirring salt in water, it .....  
 a) appears                      b) disappears                      c) floats                      d) evaporates
- 17- Put the ice cream in the ..... or it will melt.  
 a) freezer                      b) oven                      c) cooker                      d) bag
- 18- is evaporation caused ..... the sun  
 a) in                      b) on                      c) with                      d) by

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- I am going to apply the volleyball team next week. ( ..... )
- 2- Sunrise can burn your skin. ( ..... )
- 3- People should wear dark colour clothes in the summer. ( ..... )
- 4- When it is hot, the temperature falls. ( ..... )
- Do you main that it's cold? ( ..... )

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

discovery	اكتشاف	common	شائع-منتشر
discover /ed	يكتشف	Ethiopia	اثيوبيا
invent /ed	يخترع	Ethiopian	اثيوبي
invention	اختراع	Turkey	تركيا
recipe	وصفة طهي	Turkish	تركي
ashes	رماد	North Africa	شما أفريقيا
fat	دهون	Londinium	الإسم الأصلي ل لندن
papyrus	ورق البردي	fire	نار
soap	صابون	Salt	ملح
ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين	cotton	قطن
coffee beans	حبوب البن	current	حالي-جاري
diamond	ماس	decade	عقد زمني 10 أعوام
original	أصلي	boil /ed	يغلي
make a powder	يصنع مسحوق	animal skins	جلود الحيوانات
mix	يخلط-خليط	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
archaeologist	عالم آثار	envelope	ظرف خطاب
herbs	أعشاب	medicine	دواء
tooth paste	معجون أسنان	current events	الأحداث الجارية
prepare	يُحضر	wool	صوف
ink pen	قلم حبر	the Chinese	الصينيين
artist	فنان-رسام	decade (10 years)	عقد زمني (10 أعوام)
paint a picture	يرسم صورة	century(100 years)	قرن ( 100 عام)
recently	حديثاً-مؤخراً	millennium	الفية (1000 عام)
describe	يصف	powder	مسحوق-بودرة
paint	يدهن - يرسم	like sand	مثل الرمال
symbol	رمز	modern	حديث
London underground	مترو أنفاق لندن	used as medicine	يستخدم كدواء
Romans	الرومان	century	قرن
text message	رسالة نصية	material	مادة
bits	قطع صغيرة	untill	حتى
traditional	تقليدي	drink	يشرب / مشروب
diamond	ماس	Tutankhamun	توت عنخ أمون

## Confusing Words

invention إختراع	Paper ورق	coffee قهوة	Soap صابون	Discover يكتشف
invitation دعوة	Pepper فلفل	café مقهي	soup شربة	invent يخترع

## Prepositions & Expressions

used as	يستخدم كـ	BCE= Before Chnstian Era	قبل الميلاد
mix with	يخلط بـ	make powder	يصنع مسحوق
make important discoveries	يقوم باكتشافات مهمة	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
on papyrus	على ورق البردي	cook on fires ashes	يطهو على رماد النار
made into powder	سحق	cook over fire	يطهو على النار
from the fourth century	من القرن الرابع	(be) made into	يتحول إلى
look for	يبحث عن	(be) made by	يُصنع بواسطة
became popular in	يصبح مشهور في	make discoveries	يقوم باكتشافات
used for + v.+ing	يستخدم في	different from	مختلف عن
over a fire	فوق النار	The first text message	أول رسالة نصية

## Opposites

Modern	حديث	Ancient	قديم/أثري	At first	في البداية	At last	في النهاية
--------	------	---------	-----------	----------	------------	---------	------------

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

find	يجد	found	found	become	يصبح	became	became
send	يرسل	sent	sent	burn	يحرق	burnt	burnt
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn	leave	بغادر	left	left

## Definitions

Ashes	رماد	the grey material that is left after a fire.
Archaeologists	علماء آثار	people who look for ancient things under the ground.
Original	أصلي	the first of something.
Powder	مسحوق	very small bits like sand.

## Language Notes

**used to + مصدر** ل **يستخدم**

The soap was used to wash wool.

**used for + v + ing** ل **يستخدم**

The soap was used for washing wool.

**used as** ك **يستخدم**

Some drinks are used as medicines.

**popular in+ مكان** في **مشهور**

Coffee is popular in Turkey.

**popular with** ب **مشهور**

Ethiopia is popular with coffee.

**made by** ب **يصنع بواسطة**

Soap was made by the ancient Egyptians.

**made into** إلى **يتحول**

The coffee beans were made into a powder.

**made of** من **يصنع** (مادة خام لم تتغير)

The first envelopes were made of animal skins.

**made from** من **يصنع** (مادة خام تغيرت)

Petrol is made from oil.

**made in+ مكان/سنة** في **يصنع**

The first car was made in 1886

## Reading

### Ancient recipes

A papyrus from 1500 BCE shows how soap was made by the ancient Egyptians: fat was mixed with ashes from a fire. The soap was used to wash wood and cotton to prepare the materials to make clothes. Coffee was discovered in Ethiopia in the eleventh century. At first, the leaves of the coffee plant were boiled in water. The drink was used as medicine. Coffee wasn't planted outside Ethiopia until the fourteenth century.

For 300 years, the original recipe from Ethiopia was used. Later, coffee became popular in Turkey. The coffee beans were cooked over a fire and made into a powder. This was mixed with water and cooked slowly on a fire's ashes. This recipe was taken all over the world.

Archaeologists recently found a toothpaste recipe from the fourth century. It was discovered near Fayoum. The recipe was written on papyrus and describes how to mix salt with herbs, to make a powder for cleaning teeth.

**Facts** حقائق

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| 1- The Great Pyramid of Giza was built 4.500 years ago.           | الهرم الاكبر         |
| 2. The first email was sent in 1971 by Ray Tomlinson.             | أول بريد الكترونى    |
| 3. The first envelopes were made of animal skins.                 | أول مظروف            |
| 4. The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.   | التليفون             |
| 5. The London Underground Railway was opened in 1863.             | مترو انفاق لندن      |
| 6. The world's biggest diamond was found in South Africa in 1905. | أكبر ماسة            |
| 7. The Pyramid of Saqqara was built 4,600 years ago.              | هرم سقارة            |
| 8. The world's oldest papyrus was written 4,500 years ago.        | أقدم بردية في العالم |
| 9. The first car was made in 1886.                                | أول سيارة            |
| 10. Tutankhamun was found in 1922 by Howard Carter.               | توت عنخ امون         |
| 11. The first text message was sent in 1992.                      | أول رسالة نصية       |

**Past Simple Passive** المجهول في الماضي البسيط

نستخدم المجهول عندما يكون الحدث ( الفعل ) أهم من الفاعل أو أن نكون لا نعرف من قام بالفعل (الفاعل) لتحويل من العلوم للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط نتبع الأتي:

- 1- نحدد الفاعل والفعل والمفعول
- 2- نحدد الزمن ( مضارع بسيط - ماضي بسيط ..... )
- 3- نضع المفعول في بداية الجملة (يصبح فاعل)
- 4- نضع was/were قبل الفعل الذي نقوم بتحويله إلى التصريف الثالث
- 5- نضع الفاعل في آخر الجملة مسبقاً بكلمة by يمكن الإستغناء عن هذه الخطوة.

فاعل + was/were (not) + P.P. + مفعول

- The Chinese first made paper.  
⇒ Paper was first made by the chinese
- Archaeologists discovered many important things in Egypt.  
⇒ Many important things were discovered in Egypt (by archaeologists).
- A famous artist painted that picture.  
⇒ That picture was painted by a famous artist.
- Egyptians didn't invent stamps.  
⇒ Stamps weren't invented by Egyptians.
- They found the world's biggest diamond in South Africa  
⇒ The world's biggest diamond was found in South Africa

- ⇒ Fat was mixed with ashes from a fire.
- ⇒ At first, the leaves of the coffee plant were boiled in water.
- ⇒ Coffee wasn't planted outside Ethiopia until the fourteenth century.
- ⇒ It was discovered near Fayoum.
- ⇒ The recipe was written on papyrus.
- ⇒ Coffee was used as medicine.
- ⇒ The recipes were written last week
- ⇒ These cakes were made this morning.
- ⇒ Toothpaste wasn't invented in Europe.
- ⇒ The ink pen was also invented by the Egyptians.
- ⇒ The first email was sent in 1971.
- ⇒ The first envelopes were made of animal skins.
- ⇒ The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.
- ⇒ The London Underground railway was opened in 1863.
- ⇒ Glasses were first invented in Italy in the 1200s.
- ⇒ The first sandals were made of papyrus.
- ⇒ The first x-ray was taken by a German doctor, Wilhelm Rontgen, in 1895.
- ⇒ The metro in Cairo was built in 1987.
- ⇒ The first text message was not sent until 1992.
- ⇒ Tutankhamun was found in 1922 by Howard Carter.
- ⇒ The first car was made in 1886.
- ⇒ The world's oldest papyrus was written 4,500 years ago.

سؤال بمعنى هل:

Was/Were + مفعول + p.p ?

Yes, ضمير was/were.

No, ضمير wasn't/weren't .

- Was The metro in Cairo built in 1987?
- ⇒ Yes, it was.
- Were the first envelopes made of animal skins?
- ⇒ Yes, they were.

سؤال بأداة إستفهام:

WH + was/were + مفعول + p.p ?

مفعول + am/is/are (not)+ P.P.

- When was the first car made?

⇒ The first car was made in 1886.

- Where were glasses invented?

⇒ Glasses were first invented in Italy in the 1200s.

مع الأفعال الناقصة

**Can/may/ will/ could/ would/should + be + p.p**

⇒ Many discoveries can be made by archaeologists.

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**Ahmed :** why do you like to study the ancients things?

**Waleed :** because I want to be an (1) .....

**Ahmed :** I think it's hard.

**waleed :** yes, but it is (2)..... useful and important.

**ahmed :** what does an archaeologist (3) .....

**waleed :** he looks for ancient thins under the (4) .....

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :**

1) **Hassan :** .....

**Yahia :** coffee was first discovered in Ethiopia

2) **Jana :** .....

**Nouran:** The Great Pyramid of Giza was built 4,500 years ago.

3) **Noha:** When was your school built?

**Basma:** .....

4) **Omar:** Who was your favourite book written by , Mazen?

**Mazen:** .....

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- 1999 was the last year of the twentieth.....

- a) century      b) year      c) hundred      d) decade

2- Mona would like the.....for the amazing cake that your mother made.

- a) book      b) recipe      c) list      d) diary

3- .....look for ancient things under the ground.

- a) Professors      b) scientists      c) archaeologists      d) inventors

4- The mobile phone is a very important.....

- a) article      b) discovery      c) invention      d) explorer

5- We gave the boys some..... to wash their hands.

- a) supplies      b) fat      c) soap      d) soup

6- Graham Bill ..... the telephone.

- a) invented      b) made      c) discovered      d) drank

- 7- The ancient Egyptians mixed fat .....ashes from a fire  
 a) in                      b) with                      c) at                      d) over
- 8- .....are the grey material left after a fire.  
 a) Powders              b) Recipes              c) Herbs              d) Ashes
- 9- A.....is a period of ten years.  
 a) month              b) century              c) decade              d) year
- 10- Stamps .....invented by Egyptians  
 a) don't              b) haven't              c) didn't              d) weren't
- 11- a..... is very expensive because it looks beautiful.  
 a) diamond              b) balloon              c) candle              d) flour
- 12- My bag..... on the plane just before we left Cairo.  
 a) put              b) was put              c) is put              d) putting
- 13- Were the chairs..... by the school children?  
 a) painted              b) paints              c) paint              d) painting
- 14- The first email ..... in 1971.  
 a) was sent              b) sent              c) is sent              d) sends
- 15- What time was the tennis match..... on television last night?  
 a) show              b) showing              c) shown              d) showed
- 16- The planes ..... after every journey.  
 a) cleaned              b) was cleaned              c) were cleaning              d) are cleaned
- 17- This school .....in 1961.  
 a) built              b) is built              c) was built              d) is build
- 18- How are cakes .....?  
 a) made              b) make              c) makes              d) making
- 19- Eggs and bread ..... by the ancient Egyptians.  
 a) ate              b) were eaten              c) are eating              d) eat
- 20- At first, the leaves of the coffee plant ..... in water.  
 a) boiled              b) is boiled              c) was boiled              d) were boiled
- 21- Every year, scientists make important..... in medicine.  
 a) news              b) discoveries              c) roads              d) lines
- 22- The Romans gave the city of London its..... name. This was Londinium.  
 a) only              b) newest              c) original              d) current
- 23- The coffee beans were cooked over a fire and made into.....  
 a) powder              b) power              c) tower              d) shower
- 24- Mona would like the..... for the amazing cake that your mother made.  
 a) book              b) recipe              c) list              d) diary
- 25- The Pyramid of Saqqara ..... 4600 years ago.  
 a) built              b) was built              c) is build              d) was building

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- Windmills are inventing in the ninth century. (.....)
- 2- Soap is made by the ancient Egyptians. (.....)

- 3- My father is a **camper**. He looks for ancient things under the ground. ( ..... )
- 4- When the fire went out, we could see **papyrus** on the ground. ( ..... )
- 5- That statue is the **interesting** one. All the others are copied. ( ..... )
- 6- The first envelopes **made** of animal skins. ( ..... )
- 7- The coffee **bins** were cooked over a fire. ( ..... )
- 8- Coffee was **covered** in Ethiopia in the 11th century. ( ..... )
- 9- This picture was **taking** by my brother. ( ..... )
- 10- I wasn't **invite** to the school party. ( ..... )
- 11- When **is** this mobile made ? - A year ago. ( ..... )
- 12- The first text message was not **sending** until 1992. ( ..... )
- 13- The world's oldest papyrus **is** written 4,500 years ago. ( ..... )
- 14- The **Romania** gave London its original name. ( ..... )

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&4

last ed	يستمر	journey	طويلة رحلة
passenger	مسافر-راكب	trip	قصيرة رحلة
sail boats	شراعية قوارب	voyage	رحلة بحرية
historian	مؤرخ	flight	رحلة طيران
historical	تاريخي	sail ed	يبحر
electricity	كهرباء	history	تاريخ
design ed	يصمم	wheat	قمح
sun clock	ساعة شمسية	flour	دقيق
candle clock	ساعة شمعية	europa	أوروبا
shadow	ظل	seconds	ثواني
complete d	يكمل	large	كبير
windmill	طاحونة هواء	finally	في النهاية
travellers	مسافرون/رحالة	hill	تل
hot air balloon	منطاد هوائي	expensive ≠ cheap	رخيص ≠ غالٍ الثمن
drawings	رسومات	scientist	عالم
clock	ساعة حائط	artist	رسام - فنان
Greeks	اليونان	chess	شطرنج
tiny	ضئيل	tradional	تقليدي
high ≠ low	عالٍ-مرتفع ≠ منخفض	flying machine	آلة طيران
French	فرنسي	carpet	سجادة
Italian	إيطالي	research	بحث علمي/يبحث

kick ed	يركل-يشوط	originally	في الأصل
the wright brothers	الأخوان رايت	wind energy	قوة الرياح

## Confusing Words

sail	يبحر	fire	نار	flight	رحلة طيران	flour	دقيق	chess	شطرنج
sale	يبيع	fare	اجرة	fight	مشاجرة	floor	طابق	cheese	جبنة

## Prepositions & Expressions

make electricity	يولد كهرباء	burn down	يحترق / يحرق
make a flight	يقوم برحلة طيران	on the Nile	في النيل
Make drawings	يصنع رسومات	(be) used to+ المصدر	يستخدم في
talk about	يتحدث عن	(be) used for +v ing	يستخدم في
think about	يفكر في	draw on	يرسم على
give a talk	يلقي حديث	build a plane	يبني طائرة
point to	يشير الى	Design a plane	يصمم طائرة
tell the time	يخبر الوقت	blow hot air into	ينفخ هواء ساخن داخل
start by	يبدأ بـ	look at	ينظر إلي
tie to	يربط بـ	take place	يحدث
took the idea for	استمد الفكرة من	something interesting	شيء ممتع

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

fly	يطير	flew	flown	blow	تهب	blew	blown
sit	يجلس	sat	sat	draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
tell	يخبر	told	told	take	يأخذ	took	taken

## Tapescript



**Teacher :** Today, I'm going to talk about the history of flight. I'll start by telling you how the first plane was designed. Does anyone know anything about it?

**Boy 1 :** I think the first plane was designed by Leonardo da Vinci.

**Teacher :** That's correct. The first drawings of planes were made in the 1480s. A plane was designed by the famous Italian scientist and artist, Leonardo da Vinci.

**Boy 2 :** Did they use his original drawing to build a plane?

**Teacher :** No, they didn't. But the drawing helped people to think about how they could fly. Now, much later, two French brothers, the Montgolfier brothers, invented the first hot air balloon. This is how it worked. They used a fire to blow hot air into the balloon. Passengers sat in a large basket that was tied to the balloon. The first passengers in the hot air balloon were animals! The first flight with people in a hot air balloon was completed in 1783. Many other flying machines were invented after this time. Some worked, but some didn't! Then, after years doing experiments with planes, the first flight was made by the American Wright brothers, in 1903. I'll tell you something interesting about this flight. It lasted only twelve seconds! Finally, let's look at how their plane design was changed over the next years.

### The history of clocks

- 1- The sun clock was invented by ancient Egyptians around 3500 BCE. As the sun moved the shadow on the clock also moved. The shadow pointed to the time.
- 2- The Chinese used these candle clocks around 520 CE. They drew on a long candle. As the candle burned down, it helped people to tell the time.

### Windmills

The ancient Egyptians understood that wind can be used to move boats- They used wind energy to sail their boats on the Nile. There are pictures of sail boats from 3,200 BCE. Windmills were invented in the Middle East in the ninth century. They were used to help make flour from wheat. Travellers took the idea for the windmill to Europe. Today, the same idea is used to make electricity in many

### Football

**Narrator:** Historians think that the game of football may have started in 2500 BCE , when Greeks ,Egyptians and Chinese played a game by kicking a ball.

### Margherita pizza

Today, I'm going to talk about the history of pizza. I'll start by telling you about the name of the margherita pizza. I'll tell you something interesting about why it got that name. It was made for the Italian Queen Margherita. Much later, the recipe was taken to the USA from Italy. Finally, let's look at how many pizza restaurants there are in the world today.

## Language Function

### إلقاء كلمة Giving a talk

Today I'm going to talk about (the history of flight) ..... اليوم سوف أتكلم عن

I'll start by telling you (how the first plane was designed).... سوف أبدأ بالتحدث عن

Much later, ..... بعد ذلك بكثير

This is how (it worked) ..... هكذا / بهذه الطريقة

I'll tell you something interesting about (this flight) ... سوف أخبركم شيئا ممتعا عن

Finally, let's look at (how that plane design was changed) .... أخيرا ، فلننظر إلى

**Teacher:** Today, I'm going to (1) .....about the history of computer games.

**Student:** I think the first computer (2)..... for TV was a tennis game, in 1967.

**Teacher:** You're right, I tell you something (3) ..... about computer games in 1970s.

**Student:** What's that, sir?

**Teacher:** They were very expensive.

**Student :** Oh! But (4) .....we can play games on the internet.

## Word building skills:

We often use the suffix **النهاية (-al)** to make adjectives from nouns.

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
history تاريخ	historical تاريخي	music موسيقى	musical موسيقي
origin أصل	original أصلي	tradition تقليد	traditional تقليدي

### Complete the following dialogue with one word each:

**Yehya is showing Walid his new mobile phone.**

**Yehya:** I'll tell you something (1).....about this mobile phone. It can do more than the first spaceships that went to the moon.

**Walid:** Do you (2) ..... that the computer inside it is better? It can't fly!

**Yehya:** Yes, that's right. The computer in the phone has more... I can't remember the word for the ability to remember something.

**Walid:** Do you mean that the computer has more memory?

**Yehya :** Yes! This is (3) .....it works. You press here to make a call.

**Walid:** I (4).....

**Complete the following dialogue with one word each:**

**Yaseen and Eyad are helping new students around the school.**

**Yaseen:** Hello to all our new students. Today, we are (1) .....to talk about the rooms in our school.

**Eyad :** We'll (2) ..... by telling you about the classrooms.

**Yaseen:** Later, we'll tell you about what we were taught last year.

**Eyad :** (3)..... , we'll take you round the school.

**Yaseen:** OK, so this room where we do experiments. I can't remember its name.

**Eyad :** It's the (4) .....

**Complete the following dialogue with one word each:**

**A teacher and student are talking about the history of flight**

**Teacher :** Do you know anything about the history of flight?

**Student :** I think the first plane was (1) ..... by Leonardo da Vinci .

**Teacher :** That's correct. The first drawings of planes were (2) ..... in the 1480s .

**Student :** What was Leonardo da Vinci's (3) .....?

**Teacher :** He was a scientist and artist.

**Student :** I would like to (4) ..... in a plane.

**Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

**1. Aya :** Who first used candle clock?

**Sara :** .....

**2. Ali :** .....

**Mustafa :** Wright brothers made the first flight.

**3. Amany:** .....

**Magy :** I think the first plane was designed by Leonardo da Vinci.

**4. Ahmed:** .....

**Tamer :** I'm going to talk about hot air balloon

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- Magdi is very ..... He can play the piano and the flute.

- a) music      b) tradition      c) musical      d) original

2- This castle is one of the most ..... buildings in England

- a) music      b) tradition      c) history      d) historical

3- The sun was low and my ..... looked very big on the road

- a) sight      b) show      c) view      d) shadow

4- I'll start by ..... you about the early 1800s.

- a) tell      b) tells      c) told      d) telling

- 5- Before electricity..... were used to light.  
 a) baskets      b) candles      c) ashes      d) messages
- 6- The Montgolfier brothers invented the hot air.....  
 a) carton      b) cartoon      c) ball      d) balloon
- 7- ..... are used to make electricity in many countries.  
 a) Whales      b) Windmills      c) Water wheels      d) Wheels
- 8- At what time is your ..... to London?  
 a) spaceship      b) flight      c) walk      d) atmosphere
- 9- Before electricity, ..... were used for light  
 a) ashes      b) carpets      c) candles      d) messages
- 10-the house was burnt .....nothing remained.  
 a) up      b) over      c) out      d) down
- 11-The architect ..... buildings,  
 a) designs      b) builds      c) makes      d) paints
- 12-The Wright brothers made their famous ..... in 1903.  
 a) fight      b) flight      c) voyage      d) trip
- 13-Magda's mother bought some eggs and put them carefully into her  
 a) basket      b) paper      c) ruler      d) rubber
- 14-A..... is a period often years.  
 a) season      b) decade      c) century      d) anniversary
- 15- When it's sunny in summer, I stand by a high building making good use of its .....  
 a) shadow      b) height      c) width      d) kind
- 16-That hotel..... 20 years ago.  
 a) built      b) builds      c) is built      d) was built
- 17-My car..... yesterday. I'll call a mechanic to repair it.  
 a) was repaired      b) wasn't repaired      c)is repaired      d) isn't repaired
- 18-This cake ..... by my sister.  
 a) is making      b) makes      c) was made      d) was making
- 19-That flat..... last year.  
 a) was painted      b) was painting      c) paints      d) painted

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- Before electricity, candies were used for light. ( ..... )
- 2- I prefer tradition music to most of the music you hear on the radio. ( ..... )
- 3- A flight is traveling by sea. ( ..... )
- 4- The invitation of windmill was used to make electricity. ( ..... )
- 5- I'll tell you something interested about planes. ( ..... )

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 1&amp;2

space travel	السفر للفضاء	laboratory	معمل
space station	محطة فضاء	moving light	ضوء متحرك
spaceship	سفينة فضاء	as well as	بالإضافة
international	دولي	most of	معظم
national	قومي	in which room	في أي حجرة
star	نجمة	U.S.A	الولايات المتحدة
equipment	معدات	Florida	
ISS (international space station)	محطة الفضاء الدولية	the sphinx	أبو الهول
planet	كوكب	the great pyramid	الهرم الأكبر
space	فضاء	The Egyptian museum	المتحف المصري
travel around	يسافر حول	how far	كم البعد
experiment	تجربة	Germany	ألماني
invent the internet	يخترع الانترنت	chocolate	شيكولاته
make a call	يجري اتصالا هاتفيا	tent	خيمة
German	ألماني	scientist	عالم
rope	حبل	For this reason	ولهذا السبب
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	discover- ed	يكتشف
lights	أضواء	experiments	تجارب
science	علوم	pigeon	حمامة
scientific	علمي	camping	تخييم
however	و مع ذلك	without	بدون
already	بالفعل	cover- ed	يغطي

## Confusing Words

international	دولي	test	إختبار/يختبر	space	فضاء	star	نجم
national	محلي/قومي	Taste	يتذوق	Spices	توابل	Stare	يدقق النظر

## Prepositions&amp; Expressions

carry out experiments	ينفذ تجارب	do experiment	يؤدي تجربة
do Tests	يؤدي اختبارات	make a test	يصنع اختبار

for this reason	لهذا السبب	do a test	يؤدي إختبار(يحل)
find out	يكتشف	have help	يحصل على مساعدة
make telephone calls	يجري مكالمة هاتفية	send a message	يرسل رسالة
in which	فيها / و الذي فيه	on TV	في التلفاز
above the earth	فوق سطح الأرض	work on spaceships	..يعمل على
for so long	لمدة طويلة جدا	go camping	يذهب للتخييم
without help	بدون مساعدة	an example of	مثال لـ
travel around	يسافر حول	take a photograph	يلتقط صورة فوتوغرافية
on the spaceship	على سفينة الفضاء	in the past	في الماضي
live in space	يعيش في الفضاء	build with	يبني بـ

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

spend يقضي	spent	spent	build يبني	built	built
leave يغادر/ يترك	left	left	speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken

## Definitions

spaceships سفن فضاء	ships that can travel to space
stars نجوم	the sun is an example of one of these
experiments تجارب	tests done by scientists to find out something
laboratory معمل	a room or building in which scientists do tests
equipment معدات	the things that are used for an activity

## Language Notes

### Spent + مدة + v ing يقضي

⇒ The scientists spend their time studying space and the earth.

### Spent money on ينفق

⇒ I spend a lot of money on clothes.

### built as تم بناؤه كـ

⇒ We built this house as a charity.

### without + noun اسم / verb + ing

⇒ Scientists cannot live in space for long without help.

### as well as بالاضافة إلى

⇒ Food was taken for the scientists as well as new equipment.

# Reading

## The International Space Station

Look at the sky at night and you will see hundreds of lights. Most of these are **stars**. If they are moving, they are probably planes. One moving light, however, is the International Space Station. This has travelled around us every day since 1998, about 400 kilometres above the earth.

### What was the International Space Station built to do?

The International Space Station was built as a big **laboratory** for scientists from many different countries. The scientists spend their time studying space and the earth.

### How do the scientists live in space for so long?

The scientists have all the food, clothes and **equipment** that they need, but they cannot live in space for long without help. For this reason, the scientists are helped by **spaceships** from earth.

### What was taken to the International Space Station in 2016?

Two spaceships left earth to go to the International Space Station in 2016 from Florida, USA. More food was taken on the first spaceship for the scientists as well as new equipment for their **experiments**. Three more scientists were taken in the second spaceship to join those already in space. So the scientists at the International Space Station have a lot of help. This is important because their work should help us to understand more about space and the earth.

### Narrator one

**Voice 1** : Who was the internet discovered by ?

**Voice 2** : Tim Berners-Lee.

### Narrator two

**Voice 1** : What was opened in 1902 for people to visit in Cairo ?

**Voice 2** : The Egyptian Museum.

### Narrator three

**Voice 1** : When was the first telephone call made ?

**Voice 2** : 1876.

### Narrator four

**Voice 1** : Which animals were used to send messages in the past ?

**Voice 2** : Pigeons

### Narrator five

**Voice 1** : How was papyrus used by the ancient Egyptians ?

**Voice 2** : For paper.

**Narrator one**

**Voice 1 :** Where was the first mobile phone call made in 1973 ?

**Voice 2 :** USA.

**Narrator two**

**Voice 1 :** Where was the first photograph ever taken in 1826 ?

**Voice 2 :** France.

**Narrator three**

**Voice 1 :** Which book was written first ?

**Voice 2 :** Robinson Crusoe.

**Narrator four**

**Voice 1 :** What was the Sphinx covered in before 1905 ?

**Voice 2 :** Sand.

**Narrator five**

**Voice 1 :** Which languages were spoken in England before the 14<sup>th</sup> century ?

**Voice 2 :** English and French.

**Past simple passive questions**

• نستخدم المبني للمجهول عندما يكون الفاعل مجهول بالنسبة لنا أو عندما يكون الحدث أهم من الشخص الذي قام به.

لتحويل من العلوم للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط نتبع الأتي:

- 1- نحدد الفاعل والفعل والمفعول
- 2- نحدد الزمن ( مضارع بسيط - ماضي بسيط ..... )
- 3- نضع المفعول في بداية الجملة (يصبح فاعل)
- 4- نضع was/were قبل الفعل الذي نقوم بتحويله إلى التصريف الثالث
- 5- نضع الفاعل في آخر الجملة مسبقاً بكلمة by يمكن الإستغناء عن هذه الخطوة.

فاعل + by + P.P. + (not) + was/were + مفعول

- ⇒ An English scientist was taken to the International Space Station last year.
- ⇒ The International Space Station was built as a big laboratory.
- ⇒ What was taken to the International Space Station in 2016?
- ⇒ Three more scientists were taken in the second spaceship.
- ⇒ The first pyramids in Egypt were built in around 2630 BCE.
- ⇒ The first car was invented by Karl Benz in 1886.
- ⇒ Bread, butter and eggs were eaten by the ancient Egyptians.

سؤال بمعنى هل:

Was/Were + مفعول + p.p ?

Yes, ضمير was/were.

No, ضمير wasn't/weren't.

- Was The metro in Cairo built in 1987?

⇒ Yes, it was.

- Were the first envelopes made of animal skins?

⇒ Yes, they were.

سؤال بأداة إستفهام:

WH + was/were + مفعول + p.p ?  
مفعول + am/is/are (not)+ P.P.

- Who was the internet discovered by ?

⇒ The internet was discovered by Tim Berners-Lee.

- What was opened in 1902 for people to visit in Cairo ?

⇒ The Egyptian Museum was opened in 1902.

- When was the first telephone call made ?

⇒ the first telephone call was made in 1876.

مع الأفعال الناقصة

Can/May/ Will/ Could/ Would/Should + مفعول+ be + p.p?

⇒ Can many discoveries be made by archaeologists?

⇒ Could tennis be played?

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:**

- At night, we can see a lot of ..... in the sky.  
a) plants                      b) stars                      c) moons                      d) pots
- This room is our..... at school for science lessons.  
a) ground                      b) playground                      c) library                      d) laboratory
- ..... travel into space.  
a) Ships                      b) Spaceships                      c) Passengers                      d) Travellers
- Spaceships carry people through.....  
a) ships                      b) seas                      c) sky                      d) space
- The doctor uses his..... to examine his patients.  
a) equipment                      b) machines                      c) glasses                      d) towel
- Scientists help us to ..... more about space and the earth.  
a) stand                      b) understand                      c) deal                      d) invent
- Two spaceships went to the..... Space Station in 2016.  
a) National                      b) Local                      c) International                      d) External
- Ships that can travel to space are called.....  
a) spaceships                      b) rockets                      c) stations                      d) labs
- Three more scientists were ..... in the second spaceship.  
a) took                      b) taken                      c) takes                      d) taking
- The scientists in the space are ..... by spaceships from earth.  
a) helped                      b) help                      c) helps                      d) had helped

- 11- Where ..... the first mobile phone call made in 1973?  
a) is                      b) were                      c) was                      d) did
- 12- What..... to the International Space Station in 2016?  
a) is taken              b) taken                      c) was taken              d) took
- 13- Who was your favourite book ..... by?  
a) writing                b) wrote                      c) write                      d) written
- 14- What ..... in 1902 for people to visit in Cairo?  
a) was opened        b) open                      c) ore opened              d) Is opened
- 15- Which animals ..... to send messages in the past?  
a) are used              b) is used                      c) used                      d) were used
- 16- Who was the internet.....by ?  
a) discovered        b) discover                      c) discovers                d) discovering
- 17- Who.....to the party ?  
a) was inviting        b) was invited                c) inviting                      d) invites
- 18- .....the room cleaned yesterday ?  
a) Is                      b) Was                      c) Will                      d) Can
- 19- What was chocolate ice cream.....of?  
a) make                      b) makes                      c) making                      d) made
- 20- When was the first photograph .....?  
a) take                      b) takes                      c) took                      d) taken
- 21- Were the pictures.....carefully ?  
a) colour                b) coloured                      c) colours                      d) to colour

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- The internet is discovered by Tim Berners-Lee. ( ..... )
- 2- When was the first telephone call make? ( ..... )
- 3- The first car is invented by Karl Benz in 1886. ( ..... )
- 4- When was your email send? ( ..... )
- 5- Who were these lessons writing by ? ( ..... )
- 6- What time are tourists taken to stay at the hotel yesterday ? ( ..... )
- 7- Where was my bag puts ? ( ..... )

## Important Vocabulary

## Lessons 3&amp;4

helmet	خوذة	technology	تكنولوجيا
observatory/ies	مرصد فلكي	astronomy	علم الفلك
century	قرن	geophysics	فيزياء الأرض
telescope	تليسكوب	the latest	الأحدث
size	مقاس-حجم	define	يُعرف
pocket	جيب	Greece	اليونان
earphones	سماعات الأذن	measure	يقيس
gloves	قفاز / جوانتي	clearly	بوضوح
speaker	متحدث	closer	أقرب
special	خاص	object	شيء
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	especially	خصوصاً
safer	أكثر أماناً	desert	صحراء
institute	معهد	control	يتحكم في
water supplies	إمدادات الماء	keep warm	يبقى دافئاً
firefighter	رجل المطافي	get dark	يصبح مظلم
relatives	أقارب	useful for	مفيد لـ
remember ed	يتذكر	material	مادة خام
album	ألبوم	thermometre	ترمومتر
result	نتيجة	Seem ed	يبدو
protect	يحمي	Brave ≠ coward	جبان ≠ شجاع

## Confusing Words

pocket	جيب	word	كلمة	discover	يكشف	right	يمين/صواب
packet	علبة	ward	عبر	invent	يخترع	write	يكتب

## Prepositions &amp; Expressions

useful for	مفيد لـ	what is special about?	ماذا يميز؟
get lost	(يضل الطريق) يتوه	make.. much safer	يجعله أكثر أماناً
get dark	يحل الظلام	go on	يستمر
do sports	يمارس رياضة	seem closer and larger	يبدو أقرب و أكبر حجماً
ce = christian era common era	بعد الميلاد	in the right time	في الوقت المناسب
keep ...warm	يحافظ على الدفء	how amazing!	ياله من شيء مذهل
built into	مدمج في / مثبت في	feel + صفة	يشعر بـ
the national research institute of astronomy and geophysics			
المعهد القومي لبحوث الفلك و الجيوفيزياء			

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

mean	يعني	meant	meant	wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
ride	يركب	rode	ridden	ring	يرن	rang	rung
drink	يشرب	drunk	drank	write	يكتب	wrote	written

## Definitions

earphones	سماعات أذن	You ear in your ears to listen to something
coin	عملة معدنية	it is something that is metal and used for money
Telescopes	تلسكوب	pieces of equipment that make things that are far away seem closer and larger
watch	ساعة يد	it is what you wear to tell you the time
album	ألبوم	it is a book in which you can keep photos, stamps, etc
Size	حجم	how big or small something is
helmet	خوذة	it is something you wear to protect your head
observatories	مرصد	buildings from which scientists watch the sky
gloves	قفازات	they are what you wear to protect your hands or to keep them warm
result	نتيجة	it is what you get after you do a test
relatives	أقارب	it is a person in your family, for example an aunt. cousin, etc.

## Language Notes:

**make + مفعول + inf. يجعل**

⇒ Tom and Jerry makes me laugh.

**make + مفعول + صفة. يجعل**

⇒ Helmets will make riding a bike much safer in the night time.

**The first/second/last to+ inf.**

⇒ The ancient Egyptians were the first people to study the stars.

**Tapescript**

**Which of this equipment do you think would be most useful in space? Why?**  
**helmet/ gloves/ earphones**

**Listen to a teacher talking to a class.**

**Teacher :** How many of you went to the technology design show last weekend?

**Tarek :** I went with my father.

**Teacher :** What was the most interesting thing you saw there, Tarek?

**Tarek :** It was ... I can't remember the word for these things. It's what you wear to keep your hands warm.

**Teacher :** Do you mean gloves?

**Tarek :** Yes, gloves. They were for people who live in cold countries, I think. You can use these gloves as a phone. So you can talk to someone without needing to take your phone from your pocket!

**Teacher :** How amazing!

**Boy 2 :** What do you call those things that you wear in your ears, to hear what the speaker is saying? Do you need them?

**Tarek :** You mean earphones? No, you don't need earphones, because there is already a small earphone built into the material.

**Boy 2 :** I saw something interesting too. It was a special ... oh, I don't know the word for it. It's something that you wear to protect your head when you are riding a bike.

**Teacher :** A helmet.

**Boy 2 :** Yes, that's the word. In this helmet, there is a light that goes on when it gets dark, so drivers can see you very clearly. It will make riding a bike much safer in the night time.

**Teacher :** Yes, those are both very good ideas.

**Reading**

I want to invent a jacket that can help visitors in the desert. The person who is wearing the jacket is protected from the sun. The jacket has special material that stops the person from feeling hot during the day and cold during the night. The jacket also has water inside it so that the person can drink when they want to. It has a screen on it, too. The screen has a map so that the person who is wearing it can never get lost. If you need help, you can talk to the screen.

# Reading

## Understanding the stars

- Every year, more and more is known about the stars and planets. Today, scientists use the latest telescopes and computers to study space, but they also use information that was discovered by Egyptians many years ago.
- The ancient Egyptians were some of the first people to study the stars. Glass was made first in Egypt in around 3500 BCE, and people probably used the glass to see the planets better. However, the first telescope was not invented until the sixteenth century.
- From 330 BCE to 168 CE, many famous scientists visited Egypt to study the earth and space. Eratosthenes, from Greece, measured the size of the earth for the first time after he spent time in Aswan. In the second century, Ptolemy of Alexandria wrote a famous book about how the planets and stars moved in space.
- In the eleventh century, buildings called observatories were built around Egypt to study the stars. Today, the observatory at Helwan is called The National Research Institute of Astronomy and Geophysics. It is one of the most important observatories in Africa.

## Functions Box



### Asking about words you don't know السؤال عن مفردات لا تعرفها

I can't remember the word for (these things ) لا أستطيع أن أتذكر الكلمة لـ.....

I don't know the word for (these things) لا أعرف الكلمة لـ.....

What do you call those things that .....? ماذا تسمي الأشياء التي .....

### Defining words تعريف أو توضيح الأشياء

It's / They're what you..... أنها/ما/هم ما

It's something that you..... إنه الشيء الذي

- ⇒ What do you call those things that you wear in your ears, to hear what the speaker is saying?
- ⇒ I saw something interesting too. Oh, I don't know the word for it. It's something that you wear to protect your head when you are riding a bike.
- ⇒ I can't remember the word for these things. It's what you wear to keep your hands warm

**Complete the following dialogue**

**Mazin and Rami are talking about a big fire.**

**Mazin :** I saw a (1)..... today. There was a big fire.

**Rami :** What was he wearing ?

**Mazin :** I can't remember the word for that thing you wear on your head.

**Rami :** Do you (2)..... a hat ?

**Mazin :** No. It is what people (3)..... to protect their heads.

**Rami :** It (4)..... a helmet.

**Complete the following dialogue**

**Amr and Taha are talking about the stars and planets.**

**Amr :** Who were some of the first people to (1) ..... the stars ?

**Taha :** The ancient Egyptians. Glass was made first in Egypt in around 3500 BCE.

**Amr :** Why did the ancient Egyptians (2)..... glass to study the sky?

**Taha :** To see the planets better. However, the first telescope was not  
(3) ..... until the sixteenth century.

**Amr :** (4) ..... is special about the observatory in Helwan ?

**Taha :** It's the first modern observatory in Africa.

**Complete the following mini dialogues**

**1) Hany :** I can't remember the word for something we use to see things far away ?

**Samy :** .....

**Hany :** Thanks, I mean that.

**2) Heba :** ..... ?

**Rania :** It's an album.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- A/An ..... is something you were to protect your head.

- a) glove      b) earphone      c) telescope      d) helmet

2- A hundred years is a .....

- a) month      b) century      c) decade      d) week

3- Scientists use the latest ..... and computers to study space.

- a) telescopes      b) helmets      c) news      d) pockets

4- ..... were built around Egypt to study the stars.

- a) Ships      b) Schools      c) Researches      d) Observatories

5- The National Research ..... of Astronomy and Geophysics is at Helwan.

- a) School      b) University      c) Institute      d) Class

6- The ..... of something is how big or small it is.

- a) size      b) colour      c) depth      d) length

7- A person in your family, for example an aunt is a .....

- a) friend      b) firefighter      c) relative      d) policeman

8- The earth is a .....

- a) star      b) sky      c) cloud      d) planet

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1- The helmet is wearing to protect your head. ( ..... )
- 2- The scientists help us understanding the earth and space. ( ..... )
- 3- The sun is one of the planets. ( ..... )
- 4- When I go camping, I take a lot of equipments. ( ..... )

**W.B. Practice test (6a)**

**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1- What is Karim doing?  
a- giving a talk    b- using a computer    c- using a dictionary    d- listening to a talk
- 2- How many meanings of the word earth does Karim give?  
a- one                      b- two                      c- three                      d- four
- 3- The word earth can mean something like .....  
a- space                      b- soil                      c- television                      d- distance

**2- Listen and answer the following questions:**

- 1- What is the woman drinking?  
.....
- 2- How was it made?  
.....
- 3- What will probably be different in the future?  
.....

**3- Complete the following dialogue:**

**Yaseen and Eyad are helping new students around the school.**

- Yaseen :** Hello to all our new students. Today, we are (1) ..... to talk about the rooms in our school.
- Eyad :** We'll (2) ..... by telling you about the classrooms.
- Yaseen:** Later, we'll tell you about what we were taught last year.
- Eyad :** (3) ..... , we'll take you round the school.
- Yaseen:** OK, so this room is. I can't (4) ..... the word for it!
- Eyad :** It's the laboratory.

**4- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues:**

- 1- **Nadine :** Too much sun can be bad for you. Are you following me?  
**Jana:** .....
- 2- **Omar:** .....?  
**Sameh:** They're called gloves. They keep your hands warm.

**5- Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Name of spaceship	Spaceship to the planet Mars	
	Leave earth	On Mars
Mariner 4	1964	-
Viking 1 and 2	1975	1976
Pathfinder	1996	1997
Rover Opportunity	2003	2004
Mars Rover	2011	2012
ExoMars	2016	2018
Mars 2020	2020	2021

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1- Which was the first spaceship to arrive on Mars?

.....

2- About how long does it take a spaceship to go to Mars?

.....

3- Why do you think Mariner 4 has no date for On Mars?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

4- was the only spaceship that took two years to reach Mars.

- a- Viking 1 and 2      b- Mariner 4      c- Mars Rover      d- ExoMars**

5- Mars is a .....

- a- star    b- shooting star    c- planet    d- meteorite**

**D- The Reader**

**A). Match column (A) with column (B):**

1- Holmes	a- Know about the crime from Holmes.
2- Mr. Merryweather	b- wanted to reach the cellar in the bank and steal he gold.
3- the thieves	c- was the manager of the bank.
4- watson	d- noticed that the knees of spaulding's trousers were dirty and had holes.
	e- had a plan a gainst Mr Holmes.

**B). Answer the following questions:**

3- Why do you think Mr. Spaulding told Mr. Wilson about the new job?

.....

4- What do you think the thieves were doing when Mr. Wilson was at the Red Headed League?

.....

**7- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- My bag ..... on the plane just before we left Cairo.

- a- put      b- was put      c- is put      d- putting**

2- Were the chairs ..... by the school children?

- a- painted    b- paints      c- paint      d- painting**

3- The first email ..... in 1971.

- a- was sent      b- sent      c- is sent      d- sends**

4- Clouds are blown ..... the wind.

- a- of      b- by      c- to      d- for**

5- I can't find my pen! It has .....

- a- stolen      b- evaporated      c- robbed      d- disappeared**

6- The girl carried the eggs home in a .....

- a- candle      b- basket      c- leaf      d- space**

7- This room is always very hot when the sun .....

- a - evaporates      b- joins      c- shines      d- happens

8- At what temperature does water .....

- a- shine      b- drop      c- freeze      d- burn

**8- Read and correct the underlined words :**

1- I am going to apply the volleyball team next week. (.....)

2- The first envelopes made of animal skins. (.....)

3- What are insects ate by? (.....)

4- When I felt a sea of water on my head, I knew it was going to rain. (.....)

**9- Write an e-mail of about 90 words to your cousin Samir telling him about some of the things that were invented in Egypt :**

Your name is Nabil. Your email address is Nabil@yahoo.com. Your cousin's name is Samir and his email address is Samir@yahoo.com.

**W.B. Practice test (6b)**

**1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1- Where was Ali taken this morning?

- a- home      b- to hospital      c- to the gym      d- to his class

2- What happened in the gym?

- a- Ali hurt his head.      b- Ali broke his leg.      c- Ali hurt his leg.      d- Ali broke his arm.

3- Where is Ali now?

- a- in hospital      b- in school      c- at home      d- in the gym

**2- Listen and answer the following questions:**

1- What is put into an area of land to get salt?

2- What happens when it is sunny?

3- What can we use after this happens?

**3- Complete the following dialogue:**

*Yehya is showing Walid his new mobile phone.*

**Yehya :** I'll tell you something (1) ..... about this mobile phone. It can do more than the first spaceships that went to the moon.

**Walid :** Do you (2) ..... that the computer inside it is better? It can't fly!

**Yehya :** Yes, that's right. The computer in the phone has more... I can't remember the word for the ability to remember something.

**Walid :** Do you mean that the computer has more memory?

**Yehya :** Yes! This is (3) .....it works. You press here to make a call.

**Walid :** I (4) .....

**4- Supply the missing part** those things that you wear in your ears?

**Nour** : .....

**2- Ahmed:** It's not hot or cold today. ....?

**Yasser:** Yes, I understand what you mean.

**5- Read the following, then answer the questions :**

You probably lock the door to your house when you go out. Did you know that ancient Egyptians also used to lock their doors? Keys were used by the ancient Egyptians in around 4000 BCE. However, their keys were very large, sometimes more than 50 centimetres long! Later, much smaller keys were invented to lock Roman doors. However, it was much harder to open an ancient Egyptian door than a Roman door! Today, you do not always need a key to lock a door. Many hotels use plastic cards. These are easier to carry than heavy keys.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1- what does the underlined word their refer to?

.....

2- What was the problem with the first keys?

.....

3- Were Roman or ancient Egyptian doors easier to open?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

4- Ancient Egyptian keys were .....

a- about half a metre long

b- smaller than Roman keys

c- not as good as Roman keys

d- more than a metre long

5- the word ancient means .....

a- very old

b- new

c- unusual

d- international.

**D- The Reader**

**A). Match column (A) with column (B):**

(A)	(B)
1- Holmes	a- was in the cellar.
2- John Clay	b- was behind wilson's shop.
3- The gold	c- was a red-headed worker .
4- The bank	d- tricked wilson.
	e- proved to be a very clever detective.

**B). Answer the following questions:**

1- How do you think that Holmes knew that Spaulding was digging a tunnel?

.....

2- Why do you think that Holmes wanted the most important policeman in London to go with him to the bank?

.....

**7- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- What time was the tennis match ..... on television last night?  
 a- show                      b- showing                      c- shown                      d- showed
- 2- The planes ..... after every journey.  
 a- cleaned                      b- was cleaned                      c- were cleaning                      d- are cleaned
- 3- This school ..... in 1961.  
 a- built                      b- is built                      c- was built                      d- is build
- 4- How are cakes .....?  
 a- made                      b- make                      c- makes                      d- making
- 5- English is one of the most popular ..... in the world.  
 a- words                      b- parts                      c- sentences                      d- languages
- 6- At what time is your ..... to London?  
 a- spaceship                      b- flight                      c- walk                      d- atmosphere
- 7- When you go out in the sun, you should wear sun .....  
 a- cream                      b- drop                      c- vapour                      d- shine
- 8- We gave the boys some ..... to wash their hands.  
 a- supplies                      b- fat                      c- soap                      d- soup

**8- Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1- All the water has grown from the cup, so there is nothing to drink! (.....)
- 2- My favourite TV programme is show on Channel 1. (.....)
- 3- The bus is leaving every day at 2 o'clock. (.....)
- 4- You should wear a hat when you ride a motorcycle. (.....)

**9- Write a paragraph of a bout 90 words on :**

" What happens in the water cycle "



The Red-Headed League  
عصبة ذوي الشعر الأحمر

By

Sir Arthur Conan Doyle (1859-1930)

## Sir Arthur Conan Doyle (1859-1930)

السير آرثر كونان دويل ( ١٨٥٩ م - ١٩٣٠ م )

author	مؤلف	professor	أستاذ جامعي
Edinburgh	إدنبره	patients	مرضي
character	شخصية	rich	غني
red-headed	ذوي الشعر الأحمر	popular	محبوب/شائع
league	عصبة	observing	ملاحظة
writer	كاتب	mysteries	ألغاز
adventure	مغامرة	idea	فكرة
"A Study in Scarlet"	دراسة باللون القرمزي	real	حقيقي
famous for	مشهور بـ	believe	يعتقد
called	يدعي	crime	جريمة
invent	يخترع	history	تاريخ
deduce	يستنتج	university	جامعة
work out	يستنتج	poor	فقير
solve	يحل	short story	قصة قصيرة
detective	محقق	century	قرن

**(the writer)**

Sir Arthur Conan Doyle was born in Edinburgh , UK .He studied to be a doctor but he also liked writing stories .After university , he became a doctor and a writer .He wrote stories and books about history.

ولد السير آرثر كونان دويل في إدنبرة، المملكة المتحدة. درس ليكون طبيباً. لكنه كان يحب كتابة القصص أيضاً. وبعد الجامعة أصبح طبيباً وكاتباً. وكتب قصص وكتب تتحدث عن التاريخ.

Conan Doyle is famous for the character he invented called Sherlock Holmes. He wrote A study in Scarlet in 1887. It was the first of 60 stories about Sherlock Holmes, a detective who lived in 221 b Baker Street in London in 1880s ,He solved lots of crimes and mysteries with his friend Watson. These crimes were very popular and many people believed that Sherlock Holmes was a real person .

اشتهر كونان دويل بالشخصية التي اخترعها والتي تسمى " شرلوك هولمز " وكتب رواية تسمى "دراسة بالقرمزي" وكانت الرواية الأولى ضمن 60 رواية عن شرلوك هولمز، المخبر الذي كان يعيش في 221 ب شارع بيكر في لندن في الثمانينات وقام بحل الكثير من الجرائم والألغاز هو وصديقه واتسون. كانت هذه الجرائم مشهورة جداً واعتقد الكثير من الناس أن شرلوك هولمز كان شخصية حقيقية.

**London in the nineteenth century لندن في القرن التاسع عشر**

The Red- Headed League is one of 12 short stories in a book called the Adventures of Sherlock Holmes .They are about London at the end of the 19th century. At that time, England was becoming a rich country. More people were living in cities, but many people were poor so there was a lot of crime. Dr Joseph Bell, Doyle's professor at university gave Doyle the idea for Sherlock Holmes. Dr Bell could work out information about his patients by observing them .Sherlock Holmes deduces information about crimes in the same way.

تعد عصابة ذوى الشعر الأحمر واحدة من 12 قصة قصيرة في كتاب بعنوان " مغامرات شرلوك هولمز". وهي قصص عن لندن في نهاية القرن التاسع عشر. في ذلك الوقت, أصبحت إنجلترا دولة ثرية. عاش معظم الناس في المدن ولكن الكثير من الناس كانوا فقراء جدا لذلك كان هناك الكثير من الجرائم. توصل كونان دويل لفكرة شرلوك هولمز من أستاذه في الجامعة " الدكتور جوزيف بيل". استطاع الدكتور بيل أن يكون المعلومات حول مرضاه من خلال مراقبتهم. و بنفس الطريقة استنتج شرلوك هولمز المعلومات عن الجرائم.

**Questions & Answers**

1. Who wrote the Red-headed League? من كاتب رواية " عصابة ذوى الشعر الأحمر"

⇒ Sir Arthur Conan Doyle . السير آرثر كونان.

2. Who gave Conan the idea for Holmes? من الذى أعطى فكرة شرلوك هولمز للمؤلف " كونان" ؟

⇒ His professor Dr Joseph Bell. أستاذه الجامعى د. جوزيف بيل.

3. Who invented Sherlock Holmes? من الذى اخترع فكرة شرلوك هولمز

⇒ Arthur Conan. السير آرثر كونان

4. What kind of story was popular in the 19<sup>th</sup> century? ما نوع القصص المشهورة في القرن 19

⇒ Stories of crimes and mysteries. قصص الجرائم و الألغاز.

5. How was Holmes like Conan's professor? كيف كان هولمز شبيها لأستاذ كونان "د. بيل"

5. What was the similarity between Dr Bell and Holmes? ما هو وجه الشبه بين د. بيل و هولمز؟

⇒ They worked out information about people by observing them.

كلاهما اكتشف معلومات عن الناس عن طريق مراقبتهم.

6. When and Where was Doyle born ? متى ولد آرثر كونان دويل؟

⇒ He was born in Edinburgh, UK in 1859. ولد في أدنبره بإنجلترا في عام 1859.

7. What did Doyle do after university ? ماذا عمل دويل بعد الجامعة ؟

⇒ He became a doctor and a writer. أصبح طبيبا وكاتبا.

8. What did Doyle write ? ماذا كتب دويل ؟

⇒ He wrote stories and books about history. كتب قصصا و كتب عن التاريخ .

9. What's the name of the famous man in many of Doyle's stories?

ماهو اسم أشهر رجل (شخصية) في العديد من قصص دويل؟

⇒ Sherlock Holmes

10. What do you know about Sherlock Holmes? ماذا تعرف عن شرلوك هولمز

⇒ He was a detective who solved many crimes and mysteries.

هو مخبر قام بحل العديد من الجرائم والألغاز.

11. How was England at the end of the nineteenth century?

كيف كانت إنجلترا في نهاية القرن الـ19؟

⇒ England was a rich country but many people were poor so there were a lot of crimes. كانت دولة غنية لكن كان هناك كثير من الفقراء لذلك كان هناك كثير من الجرائم.

12. Why was there a lot of crime in England at the end of the 19th century?

لماذا كان هناك الكثير من الجرائم في إنجلترا؟

⇒ Because there were many poor people. لأنه كان هناك الكثير من الفقراء.

13. What does "the Red-Headed League" mean? ماذا تعني "عصابة ذوى الشعر الأحمر"؟

⇒ It means a group of people with red hair. مجموعة من الناس لهم شعر أحمر.

14. Why do you think more people were living in cities in the nineteenth century? لماذا كان يعيش الكثير من الناس في المدن في القرن 19؟

⇒ Because London was becoming rich and there were more jobs there.

لأن لندن أصبحت أغنى وكان هناك وظائف أفضل وأكثر.

15. Why do you think that detective stories were popular at that time?

لماذا كانت القصص البوليسية مشهورة في ذلك الوقت

⇒ because there were a lot of crimes and people wanted to solve these crimes.

لأنه كان هناك كثير من الجرائم وأراد الناس أن يحلوا هذه الجرائم

16. What kinds of crimes do you think there were in London at that time?

Why? ما أنواع الجرائم المنتشرة في لندن في ذلك الوقت؟ ولماذا؟

⇒ I think robbery and stealing because there were a lot of poor people.

أعتقد السرقة والسطو بسبب وجود كثير من الفقراء في ذلك الوقت

17. Why did people believe that Sherlock Holmes was a real person?

لماذا أعتقد الناس أن هولمز كان شخصية حقيقية

⇒ Because these stories were very popular. لأن هذه القصص كانت شائعة جدًا.

⇒ These stories helped people to solve many crimes. هذه القصص ساعدت في حل الجرائم.

18. What are the aims of writing that kind of stories ?

⇒ a) To reflect the daily life.

لكي تعكس الحياة اليومية

⇒ b) To clear up the effects of good and bad moralities. لتوضيح أثار الأخلاق الجيدة والفاصلة.

## Characters الشخصيات

### Sherlock Holmes شارلوك هولمز

- ⇒ He was a famous detective who could solve crimes.
- ⇒ He could solve the mystery of the Red-Headed League.

### Dr Watson دكتور واطسون

- ⇒ He was Sherlock Holmes's friend.

### Mr Jabez Wilson السيد جيبز ويلسون

- ⇒ He had a small shop in London.
- ⇒ He wanted Sherlock Holmes to solve the mystery of the Red-Headed League.
- ⇒ He worked at the Red-Headed League for 8 weeks.

### Vincent Spaulding (John Clay) فينسنت سبولدينج / جون كلاي

- ⇒ He was Mr Wilson's assistant .
- ⇒ He was a famous thief.
- ⇒ He invented the idea of the Red-Headed League.
- ⇒ He wanted to rob the bank behind Mr Wilson's shop.

### Mr Duncan Ross السيد دونكن روس

- ⇒ The manager of the Red Headed League.
- ⇒ He was John Clay's friend.

### Peter Jones بيتر جونز

- ⇒ He was the most important policeman in London.
- ⇒ He helped Holmes to catch the thieves.

### Mr Merryweather السيد ميري ويزر

- ⇒ He was the manager of the bank behind Mr Wilson's shop.

## Chapter 1

talk to	يتكلم مع	true	حقيقي	leave	يترك
detective	محقق-مخبر	decided	قرر	during	أثناء
living room	حجرة المعيشة	wonderful	رائع	copy	ينسخ
solve crimes	يحل الجرائم	assistant	مساعد	encyclopaedia	موسوعة
look at	ينظر إلى	show	يبين/يُرى	pay	المقابل المادي
carefully	بحرص	advert	إعلان	out of the shop	خارج المحل
mystery	لغز	newspaper	جريدة	foolish	أحمق
work out	يستنبط	office	مكتب	unusual	غير طبيعي

labourer	عامل	outside	خارج	employ	يوظف
do writings	قام بكتابات	push past	يندفع مارا بـ	4 hours a day	4 ساعات باليوم
information	معلومات	manager	مدير	tell	يخبر
surprised	مندهبش	until	حتى	the next day	اليوم التالي

One day, Dr Watson visited his friend Sherlock Holmes at his home in London. When he arrived, Sherlock Holmes was talking to a man in his living room. The man's name was Mr Jabez Wilson. Mr Wilson knew that Holmes was a famous detective who could solve crimes and he wanted him to solve a mystery.

ذات يوم زار دكتور واتسون صديقه شرلوك هولمز في منزله بلندن. وعندما وصل وجد شرلوك هولمز يتحدث إلى رجل في حجرة المعيشة الخاصة به. وكان هذا الرجل يسمى السيد "جيبز ويلسون". عرف السيد ويلسون أن هولمز مخبر مشهورا حيث يمكنه الكشف عن الجرائم ولذلك أراد أن يحل له لغزا.

While Mr Wilson was talking, Holmes looked at him carefully. He looked at Mr Wilson's face, his hands and his clothes. He worked out that Mr Wilson used to be a labourer, that he visited China in the past and that he did a lot of Writing. When Sherlock Holmes told Mr Wilson this information. He was very surprised because everything Sherlock Holmes said was true! Mr Wilson decided that Holmes must be a wonderful detective.

بينما كان السيد ويلسون يتحدث, نظر هولمز إليه بعناية حيث نظر إلى وجهه ويديه وملابسه. استتبط هولمز أن السيد ويلسون اعتاد أن يكون عاملاً يدوياً وأنه زار الصين فيما مضى كما قام بالكثير من الكتابات. عندما أخبر شرلوك هولمز السيد ويلسون بهذه المعلومات كان مندهشا جدا لأن كل ما قاله شرلوك هولمز كان حقيقيا. لذا قرر السيد ويلسون أنه من المؤكد أن هولمز مخبراً رائعاً.

Mr Wilson started telling Holmes his story. He had a small shop in London where he worked with his assistant Vincent Spaulding. Not many people visited Mr Wilson's shop and he wasn't a rich man. One day, Mr Spaulding showed him an advert in the newspaper for a job with the Red-Headed League.

بدأ السيد ويلسون يخبر هولمز بقصته : وهي أنه كان يمتلك متجراً صغيراً في لندن حيث كان يعمل مع مساعده فنسنت سبولدينج ولم يكن يأتي الكثير من الناس إلى متجر السيد ويلسون كما أنه لم يكن رجلاً غنياً. وذات يوم عرض السيد على السيد ويلسون إعلاناً في إحدى الصحف عن وظيفة لدى "عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر."

The Red-Headed League found jobs for men with red hair. Mr Spaulding wanted Mr Wilson to ask about the job because Mr Wilson had red hair and the job was only a few hours a week. The money could really help Mr Wilson and his small shop.

خصصت "عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر" وظائف لذوى الشعر الأحمر من الرجال. أراد السيد سبولدينج من السيد ويلسون أن يتقدم لطلب هذه الوظيفة حيث أن السيد ويلسون كان ذو شعر أحمر اللون كما أن الوظيفة كانت لمدة ساعات قليلة في الأسبوع. كما أن المال الذى سيحصل عليه يمكن أن يساعده حقا كما سيساعد متجره الصغير.

That afternoon, Mr Spaulding took Mr Wilson to the Red-Headed League. There were a lot of men waiting outside the office and they all had red hair. But Mr

Spaulding pushed past all the men until they were outside the door. They went inside and met the manager. Mr Duncan Ross, who told them about the job.

أخذ السيد سبولدنج في ظهيرة هذا اليوم السيد ويلسون إلى عصابة ذوى الشعر الأحمر. وكان هناك الكثير من الرجال منتظرين خارج المكتب وجميعهم ذوى شعر أحمر. ولكن السيد سبولدنج قام بدفع جميع الرجال أمامه إلى خارج باب المكتب ودخل السيد ويلسون وسبولدنج إلى المكتب وقابلا المدير السيد "دونكان روس" والذي أخبرهم عن الوظيفة.

The person who got the job would have to come to the office every day between ten and two o'clock. He wouldn't be able to leave the office during this time. While he was in the office. He would have to copy all the information from a large encyclopedia into a book. The pay was £4 a week. This was a lot of money! Mr Ross told Mr Wilson that if he could start work the next day, he could have the job! Mr Wilson was very surprised but quickly said yes.

على الشخص الذى سيحصل على الوظيفة أن يتواجد بالمكتب من الساعة العاشرة حتى الثانية يوميا ولا يمكنه مغادرة المكتب خلال تلك الفترة. وبينما هو فى المكتب سيقوم بنسخ كل المعلومات من موسوعة كبيرة إلى إحدى الكتب مقابل مبلغا أربعة جنيهات استرلينية أسبوعيا وكان هذا مبلغ كبيرا. أخبر السيد روس السيد ويلسون أنه إذا كان بإمكانه البدء فى العمل من اليوم التالى فإنه سيحصل على الوظيفة. كان السيد ويلسون مندهشا جدا إلا أنه سرعان ما قال "نعم"

### Questions & Answers

**1- What was Sherlock Holmes doing when Dr Watson arrived?**

ماذا كان يفعل شرلوك هولمز عندما وصل دكتور واتسون؟

⇒ He was talking to a man in his living room. كان يتحدث إلي رجل في حجرة المعيشة.

**2- What was the man's name?**

ماذا كان اسم الرجل؟

⇒ It was Mr Jabez Wilson. كان اسمه مستر جيبز ويلسون.

**3- Who was Sherlock Holmes?**

من هو شرلوك هولمز؟

⇒ He was a famous detective who could solve crimes. كان محقق مشهور استطاع حل الجرائم.

**4- What did Mr Wilson want Holmes to do? ماذا أراد السيد ويلسون من هولمز أن يفعل؟**

⇒ To solve his mystery. أن يحل له لغزه.

**5- What did Holmes do While Mr Wilson was talking?**

ماذا فعل هولمز بينما كان مستر ويلسون يتحدث؟

⇒ He looked carefully at Mr Wilson's face, hands and clothes.

نظر إلى وجه السيد ويلسون ويديه وملابسه بحرص.

**6- What did Holmes work out While Mr Wilson was talking?**

ماذا اكتشف هولمز بينما كان مستر ويلسون يتحدث؟

⇒ Wilson used to be a labourer. أعتاد أن يكون عاملا يدويا.

⇒ He visited china in the past. زار الصين في الماضي.

⇒ He did a lot of writings. قام بالعديد من الكتابات.

**7- Why was Mr Wilson surprised when he was listening to Mr Holmes?**

لماذا كان السيد ويلسون مندهشاً عندما كان يستمع لهولمز

⇒ Because everything Holmes said was true. لأن كل شيء قاله هولمز كان صحيحاً.

**8- What was Mr Wilson's opinion about Sherlock? ماذا كان رأى السيد ويلسون في هولمز؟**

⇒ Mr Wilson decided that Holmes must be a wonderful detective.

قرر السيد ويلسون أن هولمز لا بد أنه محققاً رائعاً

**9- What did Mr Wilson have? ماذا كان يمتلك مستر ويلسون؟**

⇒ He had a small shop in London. كان يمتلك محل صغير في لندن .

**10- Who was Mr Wilson's assistant? من كان مساعد مستر ويلسون؟**

⇒ Vincent Spaulding. فنسنت سبولدنغ.

**11- Why wasn't Mr Wilson a rich man? لماذا لم يكن مستر ويلسون غنياً؟**

⇒ Because he had a small shop. لأنه كان يمتلك محل صغيراً.

⇒ Because not many people visited Mr Wilson's shop. لأنه لم يكن يزور محله كثير من الناس.

**12- What did Mr Spaulding show Mr Wilson? ماذا عرض السيد سبولدنغ على السيد ويلسون؟**

⇒ He showed him an advert for a job in the newspaper . عرض عليه إعلان في الجريدة .

**13-What was the newspaper's advert about? عن ماذا كان هذا الإعلان؟**

⇒ It was about a job with the Red- Headed League. كان عن وظيفة مع عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر.

**14- What is unusual about the Red-Headed League?**

ما الذى لم يكن معتاداً في عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر؟

⇒ They only employ men with red hair. أوجدوا وظائف للرجال ذوى الشعر الأحمر فقط.

⇒ The pay was £4 pounds a week. الأجر كان أربعة جنيهات استرلينية في الإسبوع.

⇒ The work was four hours a day. العمل كان أربعة ساعات باليوم.

**15- Why did Mr Spaulding want Mr Wilson to ask about the job ?**

لماذا أراد السيد سبولدنغ من السيد ويلسون أن يسأل عن الوظيفة؟

⇒ Because Mr Wilson had red hair لأن السيد ويلسون كان لديه شعر أحمر

⇒ Because he wanted Wilson to be out of the shop. لأنه أراد ان يكون ويلسون خارج المحل.

**16- Where did Mr Spaulding take Mr Wilson ? أين اصطحب السيد سبولدنغ السيد ويلسون؟**

⇒ to the Red-Headed League. إلى عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر.

**17-Who was waiting outside the office? من الذى كان واقفاً خارج المكتب؟**

⇒ A lot of people with red hair. الكثير من الناس ذوى الشعر الأحمر.

**18- Who was the manager of the League ? من هو مدير عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر؟**

⇒ Mr Duncan Ross. السيد دونكان روس.

19- What was the time of the job?

ما هو وقت الوظيفة؟

⇒ every day from ten to two o'clock.

يومية من العاشرة إلى الثانية.

20-What would Mr Wilson have to do in the job with the Red-Headed League ?

ما الذى سيفعله السيد ويلسون فى وظيفته مع عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر؟

⇒ copy information from an encyclopaedia into a book.

ينسخ المعلومات من موسوعة كبيرة إلى كتاب.

21-How much was the pay?

كم كان المقابل المادى؟

⇒ The pay was £4 a week. أربعة جنيهات استرلينية.

22-When would Mr Wilson start work?

متى سيبدأ السيد ويلسون العمل؟

⇒ the next day.

فى اليوم التالى.

23- What was Mr Holmes clever at?

فيما كان هولمز ماهراً؟

⇒ He was clever at solving crimes. كان ماهراً فى حل الجرائم.

24. What did holmes work out about Mr Wilson?

ماذا إستنتج هولمز عن السيد ويلسون

⇒ Wilson used to be a labourer. أعتاد أن يكون عاملاً يدوياً.

⇒ He visited china in the past. زار الصين فى الماضى.

⇒ He did a lot of writings. قام بالعديد من الكتابات.

### Critical Thinking

25-Why do you think Mr Spaulding wanted Mr Wilson to get a job with the

Red- headed League? لماذا أراد سبولدينج فى اعتقادك أن يحصل السيد ويلسون على الوظيفة مع عصبة ذوى الشعر

الأحمر

26- Why did Mr Wilson accept the job? لماذا قبل السيد ويلسون الوظيفة؟

⇒ Because he wasn't rich. لأنه لم يكن غني.

⇒ Because the money could help him and his small shop.

لأن المال الذى سيحصل عليه يمكن أن يساعده كما سيساعد متجره الصغير

27-Do you think it was unusual that Mr Ross gave Mr Wilson the job? Why ?

هل تعتقد انه كان من غير المعتاد ان يمنح السيد روس الوظيفة للسيد ويلسون؟ لم؟ لا؟

⇒ No, because Wilson had red hair. لا. لأن ويلسون كان لديه شعر أحمر.

⇒ Yes, because Mr Ross didn't see the other men. نعم. لأن مستر روس لم يقابل الرجال الآخرين.

28-Do you think that Mr Wilson will find it difficult to do both this job and his

job in the shop? Why? هل تعتقد أن السيد ويلسون سيجد صعوبة فى القيام بوظيفتين معاً؟ ولماذا؟

⇒ No, I think because the job was too easy. لاز لأن الوظيفة كانت سهلة جدا.

29-Why do you think Mr Ross gave Mr Wilson the job? لماذا أعطي روس الوظيفة لويلسون؟

⇒ I think because Wilson had red hair. لأن ويلسون كان لديه شعر أحمر

⇒ He wanted Mr Wilson to be out of his shop for some time

30. Sherlock Holmes was a wonderful detective. Explain. كان هولمز محقق رائع. اشرح

31. Find an example in the story that shows us that Sherlock Holmes is a good

detective. اوجد مثال في القصة يوضح أن هولمز كان محققا جيدا

⇒ He could solve the ystery. إستطاع أن يحل اللغز.

⇒ He worked out that Mr Wilson used to be a labourer, visited China and did a lot of Writing. اكتشف أن السيد ويلسون اعتاد أن يكون عاملاً وأنه زار الصين و قام بالكثير من الكتابة.

32- Would you like to do the job for the Red-Headed League ? Why / Why not ?

⇒ Yes, because it's an easy job for a lot of money. نعم. لأنها وظيفة سهلة.

⇒ No, because it was a foolish job. لا. لأنها وظيفة حمقاء

33. What's your opinion about Mr Spaulding's behaviour with the men waiting at the Red-Headed League ?

ما رأيك في سلوك سبولنج مع الرجال المنتظرين في عصابة ذوي الشعر الأحمر

⇒ It was a bad behavior. كان سلوك سيء

34- Why do you think Holmes looked at Mr Wilson carefully ?

⇒ to work out information about him. لكي يستنبط معلومات

35- Why was Mr Wilson surprised when he was listening to Holmes?

لماذا كان السيد ويلسون مندهش عندما كان يستمع لهولمز؟

⇒ Because everything that Holmes said was true.

36- What was unusual about the Red-Headed League?

ما الغير طبيعي تجاة عصابة ذوي الشعر الاحمر؟

⇒ They provide jobs for men with red hair.

37- Why do you think Mr Spaulding pushed past all the men who were waiting outside? لماذا تعتقد قام اليبد روس بدفع الرجال؟

⇒ Because he wanted only Wilson to get the job.

38- Why do you think the red-headed league provided jobs for men with red hair only? لماذا توفر عصابة ذوي الشعر الأحمر وظائف لمن يمتلكون شعر أحمر فقط؟

⇒ I think they were planning something

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- Sherlock Holmes	a- was Mr. Wilson's assistant.
2- Mr. Wilson	b- was the manager of the Red-Headed League.
3- Mr. Spaulding	c- was a famous detective.
4- Mr. Duncan Ross	d- was Sherlock Holmes' friend.
	e- had a small shop in London.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- Sherlock Holmes	a- was Sherlock Holmes' friend.
2- Dr. Watson	b- found jobs for the men with red hair.
3- Mr. Ross	c- could solve crimes and mysteries.
4- Mr. Spaulding	d- pushed passed all the men outside the office.
	e- was the manager of the Red-Headed League.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- Holmes	a- visited Holmes in his house.
2- Dr. Watson	b- lived at 221b Baker Street, London.
3- Mr. Duncan Ross	c- told Mr. Wilson that he could start work the next day.
4- Mr. Wilson	d- was very rich man.
	e- used to be a labourer.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- The pay	a- showed Mr. Wilson an advert for a job
2- Mr. Spaulding	- accepted to start work the next day.
3- Mr. Wilson	c- was £4 a week
4- The advert	d- was in the newspaper.
	e- was a wonderful detective.

## Chapter 2

ink	حبر	letter	خطاب	knock on	يطرق على
real	حقيقي	solve a mystery	يحل لغز	answer	يجيب
seem	يبدو	ask about	يسأل عن	suspected him	شك به
foolish	أحمق	assistant	مساعد	feel felt	يشعر
to his surprise	لدهشته	violin	كمان	surprised	مندهش
wait for him	ينتظره	concert	حفلة موسيقية	dig a tunnel	يحفر نفق
until	حتى	go past	يمر أمام	so that	لكي
at the end of	في نهاية	walk up to	يذهب نحو	trousers	بنطلون
receive	يستقبل	hit hit	يضرب	understand	يفهم
pay	الأجر	ground	الأرض	explain	يشرح
content	قانع- راض	walking stick	عصا مشي	landlord	صاحب العقار
locked=closed	مغلق	unusual	غير طبيعي	restaurant	مطعم
newspaper shop	محل جرائد	knees of his trpusers	ركب البنطلون	get to the concert	يصل الحفل

The next day, Mr Wilson bought a pen, some ink and some paper and went to the Red- Headed League. He thought about the job. Could it be real? It seemed foolish to copy an encyclopaedia. But to his surprise, when he arrived at the office Mr Ross was waiting for him. So Mr Wilson sat at the table and started work. He copied information from the encyclopaedia into a book until two o'clock. Then he went home.

في اليوم التالي، اشترى السيد ويلسون قلماً وحبراً وبعض الورق وذهب إلى "عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر". فكر السيد ويلسون في الوظيفة متسائلاً "هل ستكون حقيقية؟" بدا للسيد ويلسون أن من الحماسة أن يقوم بنسخ موسوعة ولكن ما أدهشه، عندما وصل إلى المكتب، وجد السيد روس في انتظاره. لذا جلس السيد ويلسون عند المنضدة وبدأ العمل. قام بنسخ معلومات من الموسوعة إلى أحد الكتب حتى الساعة الثانية ثم عاد للمنزل.

Mr Wilson went to the office every day and at the end of the week he received his pay of £4. The work was easy and he was very content. This continued for eight weeks. One day, he went to the office, but it was locked. There was a letter on the door that said "The Red-Headed League has closed".

أخذ السيد ويلسون في الذهاب إلى المكتب كل يوم وفي نهاية الأسبوع تسلم أجره وهو أربعة جنيهات استرلينية. كان العمل سهلاً وكان هو قانعاً. واستمر ذلك مدة ثمانية أسابيع وذات يوم ذهب إلى المكتب ولكنه كان مغلقاً. وكانت هناك رسالة على الباب تقول إن عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر قد أغلقت.

Mr Wilson didn't know what to do. He asked the landlord why the office was closed, but the landlord said that he didn't know. He said that he didn't know Mr

Ross or the Red-Headed League. It was a mystery and Mr Wilson wanted Sherlock Holmes to solve it.

لم يعرف السيد ويلسون ماذا يفعل فسأل صاحب العقار لماذا المكتب مغلقاً إلا أنه أخبره أنه لا يعرف السيد روس ولا عصابة ذوى الشعر الأحمر. إنه لغز محير ! لذلك أراد السيد ويلسون أن يقوم شرلوك هولمز بحله.

Holmes asked Mr Wilson some questions about his assistant Mr Spaulding. After Mr Wilson left, Holmes asked Dr Watson to go to a violin concert with him that evening. On the way, they could go past Mr Wilson's shop.

سأل هولمز ويلسون بعض الأسئلة عن مساعده السيد سبولدينج. وبعد أن غادر السيد ويلسون طلب هولمز من الدكتور واتسون أن يذهب معه إلى حفل موسيقى للعزف على الكمان ذلك المساء. وفي الطريق مروا أمام متجر السيد ويلسون.

When they arrived, Holmes walked up to the shop and hit the ground with his walking stick three or four times. Dr Watson thought this was very unusual! Then Holmes knocked on the shop door. A young man answered and Holmes asked him how to get to the concert.

عندما وصلا اقترب هولمز من المتجر وضرب الأرض بعصا السير الخاصة به ثلاث أو أربع مرات. اعتقد الدكتور واتسون أن ما يفعله هولمز شيئاً غريباً، ثم طرق هولمز باب المتجر فأجابه شاب، ثم سأله عن كيفية الوصول إلى الحفل الموسيقى.

"Did you knock on the door so that you could see the young man who works for Mr Wilson?" asked Dr Watson.

"No, I didn't want to see the man. I wanted to see the knees of his trousers," replied Holmes.

سأل دكتور واتسون هولمز قائلاً «هل طرقت الباب كي ترى الشاب الذى يعمل لدى السيد ويلسون؟» فأجابه هولمز قائلاً «لا. لم أريد رؤيته، بل أردت أن أرى ركبتا البنطلون الخاص به.

Dr Watson thought that that was a very unusual answer. He didn't understand. But Holmes didn't explain. He was looking carefully at the different houses and shops behind Mr Wilson's shop. There was a newspaper shop, a bank and a restaurant. Then it was time to go to the concert, so the two men left.

اعتقد الدكتور واتسون أن تلك الإجابة غريبة فهو لم يفهم إلا أن هولمز لم يفسر، بل كان ينظر باهتمام إلى المنازل المختلفة والمتاجر الموجودة خلف متجر السيد ويلسون. كان هناك متجر لبيع الصحف وبنكا ومطعماً، ثم حان وقت الذهاب للحفل الموسيقى فسرعان ما غادر الاثنان المكان.

## Questions & Answers

1-What did Mr Wilson buy before going to the Red- Headed League?

ما الذى اشتراه السيد ويلسون قبل الذهاب لعصابة ذوى الشعرالأحمر؟

⇒ a pen, some ink and some paper. قلم و بعض الحبر و بعض الأوراق

2-What was his opinion about the job? ماذ كان رأيه فى الوظيفة؟

3- What did Mr Wilson feel about the job before he started?

⇒ It was a foolish job.

4-Why was Mr Wilson surprised? لماذا كان السيد ويلسون مندهشاً

⇒ Because Mr Ross was waiting for him at the office. لأن السيد روس كان ينتظره في المكتب.

5- What did Mr Wilson do in his job? ما الذى كان يفعله السيد ويلسون فى عمله؟

⇒ copied information from the encyclopaedia into a book.

نسخ معلومات من الموسوعة إلى أحد الكتب

6- When could Mr Wilson go home? متى استطاع السيد ويلسون العودة للمنزل؟

⇒ At two o'clock. فى الساعة الثانية.

7- When did Mr Wilson receive his pay? متى تلقى السيد ويلسون أجره؟

⇒ At the end of the week. فى نهاية الاسبوع.

8- How much pay did he receive ? كم كان راتبه؟

⇒ He received £4. تسلم أربعة جنيهات استرلينية.

9-What did Mr Wilson feel about the job while he was doing it? بما شعر أثناء العمل

10- How did Mr Wilson find the work? كيف وجد السيد ويلسون العمل؟

⇒ It was easy and he was content. وجدته سهلاً وكان قانعاً.

11- How long did Mr Wilson work at the Red- Headed League ?

كم المدة التى عملها ويلسون لدى عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر؟

⇒ eight weeks. ثمانية أسابيع.

12- What did the landlord tell Mr Wilson about the Red-Headed League ?

ماذا أخبر مالك العقار السيد ويلسون عن عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر؟

⇒ He said that he didn't know Mr Ross or the Red-Headed League .

أخبره أنه لا يعرف السيد روس ولا عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر.

13- What did Mr Wilson ask Holmes to do? ما الذى طلبه السيد ويلسون من هولمز؟

⇒ to solve the mystery. أن يحل اللغز.

14- Who did Holmes ask Wilson about? عن من سأل هولمز السيد ويلسون؟

⇒ Mr Spaulding . السيد سبولدنج .

15- Where were Holmes and Watson going? أين كان هولمز و واتسون ذاهبين؟

⇒ To a violin concert. إلى حفل موسيقى للعزف على الكمان .

16. How do we know that Holmes like music? كيف عرفنا أن هولمز يحب الموسيقى؟

⇒ When he went to a violin concert. عندما ذهب للحفل .

17- What could they go past? بماذا مروا؟

⇒ They could go past Mr Wilson's shop. مروا أمام متجر السيد ويلسون .

18- How did Mr Holmes hit the ground? كيف ضرب السيد ويلسون الأرض؟

⇒ By his walking stick. بعصا السير الخاصة به .

19- What did Holmes ask the young man about? عن ماذا سأل هولمز الشاب؟

⇒ how to get to the concert. سأله عن كيفية الذهاب للحفل الموسيقي

20- What was Dr Watson's opinion about Mr Holmes's answer to his question? ماذا كان رأى د. واتسون عن أجابة هولمز عن سؤاله؟

⇒ He thought that it was a very unusual answer. اعتقد انها إجابة غير معتادة.

21-Why did Holmes knocked on the door? لماذا طرق هولمز على الباب؟

⇒ To see the knees of the young man's trousers. لكي يرى ركبتا البنطلون الخاص به.

22- What was Sherlock Holmes looking at when he spoke to the man in Mr Wilson's shop? إلى ماذا كان ينظر هولمز عندما عندما تحدث إلى الرجل في محل السيد ويلسون؟

⇒ The knees of the young man's trousers. ركبتا البنطلون الخاص به.

23. What happened to the Red-Headed League? ماذا حدث لعصابة ذوي الشعر الأحمر؟

⇒ It closed. أغلقت

24. What shops were behind Mr Wilson's shop? ما المحلات التي كانت خلف محل السيد ويلسون؟

⇒ a newspaper shop, a bank and a restaurant. كان يوجد محل جرائد و بنك و مطعم

25. Why was Mr. Wilson very content?

⇒ Because the work was easy and the pay was a lot of money

### **Critical Thinking**

26. Why do you think Sherlock Holmes hit the ground with his walking stick?

لماذا ضرب هولمز الأرض بعصاه في إعتقادهك

⇒ Because he suspected that someone was digging a tunnel لأنه شك أن شخص ما يحفر نفق

27. Do you think it was unusual that Sherlock Holmes looked at the man's trousers when he opened the door? Why / Why not?

هل تعتقد انه كان من غير المعتاد أن ينظر هولمز إلى بنطلون الرجل عندما فتح الباب؟

⇒ Yes , because it is usual to look at the face. نعم لأن الطبيعي أن ننظر إلي الوجه.

28. Why do you think Sherlock Holmes wanted to see Mr Spaulding and the shops behind where he worked?

لماذا اراد هولمز أن يرى السيد سبولدنج و المحلات الموجودة حيث كان يعمل؟

⇒ To solve the mystery. لكي يحل اللغز.

⇒ To deduce the relationship between them. لكي يستنتج العلاقة بينهم.

29. Do you think that Mr Spaulding had a relation with the Red- Headed League ? Why ?

هل تعتقد هناك علاقة بين السيد سبولدنج وعصابة ذوي الشعر الأحمر؟ لم؟ لم لا؟

⇒ Yes, because he told Mr Wilson about the job and went with him.

نعم لأنه أخبر ويلسون عن الوظيفة وذهب معه.

30. Why do you think Sherlock Holmes asked Mr Wilson about Mr Spaulding?

لماذا سأل هولمز السيد ويلسون عن السيد سبولدينج؟

⇒ Because he suspected him . لأنه شك به

31. Which of the places near the shop do you think a thief would be interested in? why? أيالماكن بالقرب من المحل سيهتم بها اللصوص؟ لماذا؟

⇒ the bank. As it has a lot of money and gold.

32. Why do you think mr Wilson was very content with his work with the red-headed league ? لماذا كان السيد ويلسون قانع؟

⇒ Because the work was easy and the pay was good. لان العمل سهل والأجر كبير.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- Holmes hit the ground	a- Dr. Watson didn't understand.
2- Holmes asked Mr. Spaulding	b- with his walking stick.
3- Holmes asked Mr. Wilson	c- about his assistant
4- Holmes didn't explain and	d- six times a week.
	e- how to get to the concert

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

1- Mr. Ross was waiting for	a- was a newspaper, a bank and a restaurant.
2- Mr. Wilson bought	b- was puzzled and didn't understand.
3- The Landlord	c- said that he didn't know Mr. Ross.
4- Dr. Watson	d- Mr. Wilson at the office.
	e- a pen, some ink, and some paper.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

1- Mr. Wilson was very	a- hit the ground three or four times.
2- Mr. Ross	b- content with the new job.
3- Sherlock Holmes	c- was Mr. Wilson's assistant.
4- Mr. Spaulding	d- the manager of the Red-Headed League.
	e- didn't went to the concert.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

1- The landlord	a- paid £4 to Mr. Wilson everyweek.
2- Mr. Ross	b- said that he didn't know anything.
3- Mr. Wilson	c- showed Mr. Wilson an advert about a job.
4- Mr. Spaulding	d- didn't explain anything to Dr. Watson.
	e- wasn't rich man but he was content.

# Chapter 3

crime	جريمة	interested in	مهتم بـ	Climb out of	يتسلق خارج
tonight	الليلة	gold	ذهب	hole	فتحة
dangerous	خطير	worried	قلق	stand up	يقف
Baker Street	شارع بيكر	move	يتحرك-ينقل	grab	يشد
Talk to	يتحدث مع	outside	خارج	predict	يتنبأ
policeman	رجل شرطة	inside	داخل	expect	يتوقع
called	يدعي	turn out	يطفئ	deceive	يخدع
hope	يأمل	about	حوالي	important	هام/مهم
catch a thief	يقبض على لص	square	مربع الشكل	Make a hole	يصنع فتحة
get into	يدخل	slowly	ببطء	Steal the gold	يسرق الذهب
Manager of the bank	مدير البنك	stone	حجر	Would be a crime	هناك جريمة
cellar	قبو- سرداب	Move up	يحرك لأعلي	escape	يهرب
large boxes	صناديق ضخمة	to the right	إلى اليمين	floor	أرضية

After the violin concert. Sherlock Holmes told Dr Watson that he had to see someone before he went home.

"There is going to be a crime tonight. Watson." explained Holmes. "and it might be dangerous. Meet me at 221b Baker Street at ten o'clock." Dr Watson arrived at Baker Street that evening. Holmes was talking to Peter Jones, the most important policeman in London, and a man called Mr Merryweather. Holmes explained to Watson that they hoped to catch a famous thief called John Clay that night.

بعد إنتهاء حفل العزف على الكمان, أخبر شرلوك هولمز دكتور واتسون أنه عليه أن يرى شخص ما قبل أن يذهب للمنزل. وضح هولمز قائلاً للدكتور واتسون "ستكون هناك جريمة هذه الليلة وربما تكون خطيرة". طلب هولمز من دكتور واتسون مقابلته قائلاً "قابلي في عمارة 221 شارع بيكر في العاشرة تماماً." وصل دكتور واتسون شارع بيكر تلك الليلة وكان هولمز يتحدث إلى "بيتر جونز" أهم رجل شرطة في لندن ورجل يسمى السيد "ماري ويزر". وضح هولمز لدكتور واتسون أنهم يأملون في الإمساك بلص شهير يدعى جون كلاي تلك الليلة.

The four men got into two taxis. While they were travelling, Holmes told Dr Watson that Mr Merryweather was the manager of the bank behind Mr Wilson's shop . The taxis were taking them to Mr Merryweather's bank. When they arrived. Mr Merryweather took them into the bank and down into the cellar. It was dark inside the cellar and there were a lot of large boxes.

استقل الأربعة رجال سيارتين أجرة وبينما كانوا في الطريق أخبر هولمز دكتور واتسون أن السيد ماري ويزر هو مديراً للبنك الذي يوجد خلف متجر السيد ويلسون. أخذتهم السيارتين إلى بنك السيد ماري ويزر وعندما وصلوا أخذهم السيد ماري ويزر إلى البنك ثم إلى السرداب تحت المبنى. كان السرداب مظلماً من الداخل وكان هناك الكثير من الصناديق الضخمة.

Holmes looked carefully at the floor of the cellar. Then he asked Mr Merryweather to tell Dr Watson why the thieves might be interested in this bank.

"They are interested in the gold in the boxes in this cellar." explained Mr Merryweather. "It is unusual to have so much gold in one bank and we have been worried. We wanted to move it."

نظر هولمز بعناية إلى أرضية السرداب ثم طلب من السيد ماري ويزر أن يخبر دكتور واتسون سبب اهتمام اللصوص بهذا البنك. فسر السيد ماري ويزر قائلاً "إنهم مهتمون بالذهب الموجود بالصناديق الموجودة بالسرداب حيث إنه من غير المألوف أن توجد هذه الكمية الكبيرة من الذهب في بنك واحد ولقد كنا قلقين لذا نريد أن ننقله.

Holmes explained that the thieves were going to come into the cellar under the ground from Mr Wilson's shop. Now, there were three policemen waiting outside Mr Wilson's shop. Holmes and the three men were waiting inside the cellar. The thieves wouldn't be able to escape! Holmes turned out the light and the four men waited for the thieves to arrive.

وضح هولمز أن اللصوص سوف يأتون إلى السرداب الموجود تحت الأرض عن طريق متجر السيد ويلسون, والآن يوجد ثلاثة رجال شرطة منتظرين خارج متجر السيد ويلسون كما أن هولمز والثلاثة رجال الذين معه منتظرين داخل السرداب لذا فاللصوص لن يكونوا قادرين على الهرب. أطفأ هولمز الضوء وانتظر الرجال الأربعة وصول اللصوص.

After about an hour, the men saw something. One of the large square stones in the floor started to move. Suddenly, they saw a hand! The hand slowly moved the stone up and to the right. Then a young man climbed out of the hole and into the cellar. When the young man stood up, Holmes quickly grabbed his arm. It was John Clay!

"John Clay! Your red-headed idea was a good One, but we've caught you!" said Holmes.

وبعد مرور ساعة تقريبا رأى الرجال شيء ما, بدأت واحدة من الأحجار مربعة الشكل في أرضية السرداب تتحرك وفجأة رأوا يداً وبدأت اليد تحرك الحجر ببطء إلى أعلى ثم إلى جهة اليمين. ثم تسلق شاباً من الفتحة إلى السرداب وعندما وقف الشاب جذب هولمز من ذراعه بسرعة. إنه جون كلاي!  
قال له هولمز "جون كلاي!" "إن عصابة ذوى الشعر الأحمر" فكرة جيدة ولكن لقد أمسكتنا بك.

## Questions & Answers

1. What did Holmes tell Dr Watson after the concert? ما الذى أخبر هولمز لدكتور واتسون  
⇒ he had to see someone ( Peter Jones). أخبره أنه عليه أن يرى شخص ما(بيتر جونز).

2. What is going to be that night? ما الذى سيحدث تلك الليلة؟

⇒ A crime. جريمة.

3. Where would Dr Watson meet Holmes? أين سيقابل د. واتسون هولمز؟

⇒ At 221 b Baker street at ten o'clock. فى 221 شارع بيكر بلندن فى العاشرة تماما.

4. Who was Peter Jones? من هو بيتر جونز؟

⇒ He was the most important policeman in London. أهم رجل شرطة فى لندن.

5. Who was Mr Merryweather?

من هو ماري ويزر؟

⇒ He was the manager of the bank.

كان مدير البنك.

6. Who was John Clay ? من هو جون كلاي؟

⇒ He was a famous thief.

كان لص شهير.

7. Where were the two taxis going?

إلى أين كانت تذهب سيارتي الأجرة؟

⇒ To Mr Merryweather's bank.

إلى بنك السيد ماري ويزر.

8. Where did Mr Merryweather take them?

إلى أين أخذهم السيد ماري ويزر؟

⇒ To the cellar of the bank.

إلى السرداب في البنك.

9. What were there in the cellar?

ما الذي كان موجوداً في السرداب؟

⇒ a lot of large boxes of gold.

الكثير من الصناديق الضخمة.

10. What were the thieves interested in?

بماذا اهتم اللصوص؟

⇒ They were interested in the gold in the boxes.

كانوا مهتمين بالذهب الموجود في الصناديق.

12. How were the thieves going to come into the cellar of the bank?

كيف سيقتحم اللصوص سرداب البنك؟

How do you think the thieves planned to take the gold out of the cellar?

كيف خطط اللصوص لإخراج الذهب من السرداب؟

⇒ Through Mr Wilson's shop.

خلال محل السيد ويلسون.

⇒ They were digging a tunnel From Mr Wilson's shop to the bank.

ويلسون.

13. Why wouldn't the thieves be able to escape ?

لماذا لم يتمكن اللصوص من

الهرب؟

⇒ Because there were three policemen waiting outside the shop and 4 waiting in

the cellar لأنه كان يوجد ثلاثة رجال شرطة منتظرين خارج المتجر وأربعة أشخاص ينتظرون في السرداب.

14. Who turned out the light ?

من الذي أطفأ الضوء؟

⇒ Sherlock Holmes.

شرلوك هولمز

15. How long did they wait for the thieves?

كم المدة التي انتظروها من أجل اللصوص؟

⇒ A bout an hour.

حوالي ساعة.

16. How did the thief try to enter the cellar?

⇒ Through Mr Wilson's shop.

خلال محل السيد ويلسون

⇒ They were digging a tunnel From Mr Wilson's shop to the bank.

كانوا يحفرون نفق من محل السيد ويلسون إلى البنك

17. How did Holmes praise the thief?

كيف مدح هولمز اللص؟

⇒ He told him his idea was good. أخبره أن فكرة عصابة ذوى الشعر الأحمر كانت جيدة.

18. What did Holmes tell the young man? ماذا أخبر هولمز الشاب

⇒ He told him that the red-headed idea was good, but they had caught him

فكرة كانت جيدة لكنه تم القبض عليه

19. What was Holmes's plan to catch John Clay and the thieves ? ما خطة هولمز

⇒ a) three policemen were waiting outside Mr Wilson's shop.

⇒ b) Holmes and the three men were waiting inside the cellar.

⇒ c) Holmes turned out the light, so thieves wouldn't be able to escape.

### Critical Thinking

1. Why was the bank manager worried about having a lot of gold in the cellar?

لماذا كان مدير البنك قلقاً بخصوص وجود الكثير من الذهب في السرداب؟

2. Why did Mr Merryweather want to move the gold?

لماذا أراد السيد ماري ويزر أن ينقل الذهب؟

⇒ because the thieves could steal the gold in the boxes.

لأن اللصوص يمكن أن يسرقوا الذهب الموجود في الصناديق.

3. How would the thieves take the gold out of the cellar ?

كيف سيخرج اللصوص الذهب من السرداب؟

⇒ Through Mr Wilson's shop.

خلال محل السيد ويلسون

⇒ They were digging a tunnel from Mr Wilson's shop to the bank.

كانوا يحفرون نفق من محل السيد ويلسون إلى البنك

4. What do you think Sherlock Holmes think of John Clay?

ماذا كان رأي شرلوك هولمز في جون كلاي في إعتقادك؟

⇒ He thought Clay was a clever thief.

اعتقد أن جون كلاي لص ذكي.

5. Do you think that John Clay was a bad man? Why / Why not?

هل تعتقد أن جون كلاي كان رجلاً سيئاً؟

⇒ Yes, because he planned to steal the gold. نعم أعتقد لأنه خطط لسرقة الذهب.

6. Why do you think that Holmes wanted to see Peter Jones ?

⇒ to help him to catch the thieves. لكي يساعده في القبض على اللصوص.

⇒ Because he was the most important policeman in London. لأنه أهم رجل شرطة في لندن.

7. What do you think the thieves were doing when Mr Wilson was at the red-headed league? ماذا تعتقد كان يفعل اللصوص بينما ويلسون في عصبة ذوي الشعر الأحمر؟

⇒ I think they were digging a tunnel from Mr Wilson's shop to the cellar of the bank.

8. Why were the thieves interested in the bank? / What were the thieves interested in?

⇒ They were interested in the gold there.

**9. Why do you think the bank manager worried about having a lot of gold in the cellar?**

⇒ Because thieves might take it

**10. Why do you think Holmes wanted the most important policeman in London to go with him to the bank?**

⇒ Because he knew there was going to be a crime and Clay was dangerous.

**11. Why do you think the thieves wouldn't be able to escape?**

⇒ Because there were three policemen waiting outside the shop and four waiting in the cellar.

**12. Do you think thieves were clever? Why? Why not?**

⇒ No, because Holmes caught them at the end.

**13. Who do you think was helping John Clay?**

⇒ I think Mr Ross.

**14. Who do you think Sherlock Holmes wanted to see after the concert?**

⇒ Peter Jones and Mr Merryweather.

**Match column (A) with column (B):**

(A)	(B)
1- There were three policemen	a- the most important policeman in London.
2- Dr. Watson met Holmes	b- the young man inside the cellar.
3- Peter Jones was	c- at 221b Baker street.
4- Holmes caught	d- outside Mr. Wilson's shop.
	e- one of the large square stone.

**Match column (A) with column (B):**

(A)	(B)
1- Peter Jones	a- was the most dangerous thief in London.
2- Holmes thought that the thieves	b- why thieves interested in the bank.
3- Mr. Merryweather explained	c- hoped to catch John Clay.
4- The young man	d- would come into from underground
	e- John Clay was Mr. Spaulding

# Chapter 4

return	يعود	find out	يكتشف	had holes	
foolish	أحمق	consider	يعتبر	kness of the trousers	ركب البنطلون
real job	وظيفة حقيقية	natural	طبيعي	solve crimes	يحل جرائم
out of	خارج	unusual	غير عادى	was finished	أنهى العمل
used to work	إعتاد أن يعمل	employ	يوظف	escape	يهرب
cellar	سرداب/قبو	mainly	أساساً	well done	أحسنت
find out	يكتشف	invent	يخترع	holes	فتحات
knee	ركبة	steal	يسرق شيء	deduced	استنتج
dirty	متسخ	thief (thieves)	لص لصوص	dig a tunnel	يحفر نفق

Sherlock Holmes and Dr Watson returned to Baker Street and Holmes explained the crime to Watson. John Clay had the idea for the Red-Headed League because his friend Mr Ross had red hair. Holmes knew that the job of copying out the encyclopaedia was too foolish to be a real job. Clay and Mr Ross invented the job because they wanted Mr Wilson out of his shop. Why?

عاد شرلوك هولمز ودكتور واتسون إلى شارع بيكر وقام هولمز بتفسير الجريمة لدكتور واتسون بأنه قد تكونت فكرة عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر لدى جون كلاى لأن صديقه السيد روس لديه شعر أحمر اللون. عرف هولمز أن القيام بوظيفة نسخ المعلومات من الموسوعة كانت حمقاء جدا لدرجة أنها لم تكن وظيفة حقيقية. واخترع كلا من كلاى والسيد روس الوظيفة لأنهم كانوا يريدون أن يجعلوا السيد ويلسون خارج متجره. لماذا؟

Mr Wilson told Holmes that Mr Spaulding often used to work in the cellar. Holmes thought that this was unusual. Holmes asked some questions about Mr Spaulding and found out that he was John Clay the thief! When Holmes knocked on the door of the shop, he saw that the knees of Mr Spaulding's trousers were dirty and had holes in them. Holmes deduced that he was digging a tunnel with Mr Ross when Mr Wilson was not in the shop.

أخبر السيد ويلسون هولمز بأن السيد سبولدينج اعتاد أن يعمل فى السرداب. اعتقد هولمز أن ما يقوم به سبولدينج شيء غير مألوف. سأل هولمز بعض الأسئلة عن السيد سبولدينج. اكتشف من خلالها أنه هو اللص جون كلاى ! فعندما طرقت هولمز على باب المتجر، رأى أن ركبنا بنطلون السيد سبولدينج كانت متسخة وبها ثقوب فاستنتج هولمز أن السيد سبولدينج كان يحفر نفقا مع روس أثناء وجود السيد ويلسون خارج المتجر.

"When I saw that the bank was behind Mr Wilson's shop, I knew why they were digging a tunnel," said Holmes. "They wanted to take the gold from the bank!"

"How did you know that they wanted to take the gold on Saturday night?" asked Watson. "When they closed the Red-Headed League, I knew the tunnel was finished. If they took the gold from the bank on Saturday, they would have a day and a half to escape before the bank opened on Monday," replied Holmes.

"Well done, Holmes!" said Watson.

قال هولمز : «عندما رأيت أن البنك يوجد خلف متجر السيد ويلسون عرفت لماذا كانوا يحفرون النفق, فهم أرادوا أخذ الذهب من البنك سأله واتسونكيف عرفت أنهم كانوا يريدون أخذ الذهب مساءً يوم السبت ؟ أجابه هولمز عندما أغلقوا مكتب عصابة ذوى الشعر الأحمر أدركت أن النفق قد تم الانتهاء منه. ولو أنهم قاموا بأخذ الذهب من البنك يوم السبت سيكون لديهم يوما ونصف للهروب قبل ان يفتح البنك اليوم الثاني فقال له دكتور واتسون أحسنت يا هولمز

## Questions & Answers

- 1- Who did Holmes explain the crime to?      لمن شرح هولمز الجريمة؟**  
 ⇒ to Dr Watson.      لدكتور واتسون.
- 2- What was Mr Spaulding's real name?      ماذا كان الاسم الحقيقي للسيد سبولدينج؟**  
 ⇒ John Clay.      جون كلاي.
- 3- Why did John Clay have the idea for the Red-Headed League ?  
 لماذا تكونت فكرة " عصابة ذوى الشعر " الأحمر لدى جون كلاي؟**  
 ⇒ Because his friend Mr Ross an Mr Wilson had red hair.  
 لأن صديقه السيد روس والسيد ويلسون كان لديهما شعر أحمر.
- 4- What was Holmes opinion of the job offered to Mr Wilson?  
 ماذا كان رأى هولمز في الوظيفة المعروضة على السيد ويلسون؟**  
 ⇒ He saw it was too foolish to be a real job.  
 لدرجة أنها لم تكن وظيفة حقيقية كان يرى أنها وظيفة حمقاء جدا
- 5- Why did Clay and Ross invented the job?      لماذا اخترع كلاي و روس الوظيفة؟**  
 ⇒ Because they wanted Mr Wilson be out of his shop.  
 لأنهم كانوا يريدون أن يجعلوا السيد ويلسون خارج متجره
- 6- Where did Mr Spaulding use to work?      أين اعتاد السيد سبولدينج أن يعمل ؟**  
 ⇒ He used to work in the cellar.      اعتاد أن يعمل في السرداب.
- 7- What was John Clay digging?      ماذا كان يحفر جون كلاي؟**  
 ⇒ He was digging a tunnel.      كان يحفر نفقاً.
- 8. When were they digging the tunnel?      متى كانوا يحفرون النفق؟**  
 ⇒ When Mr Wilson was not in the shop.      عندما كان السيد ويلسون خارج المتجر.
- 9. Why were they digging a tunnel?      لماذا كانوا يحفرون النفق؟**  
 ⇒ To steal the gold from the bank.      لكي يأخذوا الذهب من البنك.
- 10- Where was the bank?      أين كان البنك؟**  
 ⇒ The bank was behind Mr Wilson's shop.      كان البنك خلف متجر السيد ويلسون.

**11- When was The Red- Headed League closed ?**

متى تم إغلاق عصبة ذوى الشعر الأحمر؟

⇒ When the thieves finished digging the tunnel. عندما انتهى اللصوص من حفر النفق.

**12- When did they plan to take the gold? متى خططوا للاستيلاء على الذهب؟**

⇒ On Saturday. يوم السبت.

**13- Why did they choose Saturday night ? لماذا اختاروا مساء السبت؟**

⇒ To have a day and a half to escape before the bank opened on Monday.

لكي يكون لديهم يوم و نصف للهرب قبل أن يفتح البنك يوم الإثنين.

**14- How did Dr Watson praise Mr Holmes? كيف مدح د. واتسون هولمز؟**

⇒ He said "Well done , Holmes" قال له " أحسنت صنعاً" يا هولمز "

**15. Who invented the idea of the Red-Headed League ?**

⇒ John Clay

**16. How could Holmes know that Mr Spaulding wanted to steal the gold from the bank ?**

⇒ When he saw the bank behind Mr Wilson's shop.

**17. What day did the thieves want to take the gold ?**

⇒ On Saturday.

### **Critical Thinking**

**1- How did Holmes know that Clay was digging a tunnel?**

كيف علم هولمز أن كلاي كان يحفر نفقاً؟

⇒ the knees of Mr Spaulding's trousers were dirty and had holes in them.

ركبتا البنطلون الخاص بالسيد سبولدينج كانتا متسختان وبهما فتحات

**2- How do you think Mr Wilson felt when he found out that Mr Spaulding was a thief ?**

⇒ I think he felt angry .

**3- What do you think makes someone a good detective ?**

⇒ a. He should be good at deducing information through observing People

⇒ b. He should think deeply.

**4- What's your opinion about Sir Arthur Conan Doyle after reading the story "The Red-Headed League" ? Why ? ما رأيك في دويل بعد قراءة القصة؟ لم؟**

⇒ I think he was a very good writer because the story was interesting.

**5- Holmes was a clever detective. Give examples. هولمز كان محقق ماهر. أعط مثال**

**6- Do you think Holmes was a clever detective? Why/why not?؟**

- ⇒ He worked out information about Mr Wilson. إستنتج معلومات عن ويلسون
- ⇒ He could deduce the plan of Mr Spaulding. إستنتج خطة السيد سبولنج
- ⇒ He could solve the mystery . إستطاع أن يحل اللغز
- ⇒ He discovered that Mr Spaulding was John Clay. إكتشف أن السيد سبولنج هو جون كلاي
- ⇒ He helped the most important policeman to catch John Clay.

**7- Do you like reading stories about crimes ? Why / Why not ?**

- ⇒ Yes, because they help us to solve crimes in our real life. نعم لأنها تساعدنا في حل الجرائم
- ⇒ Yes, because they are interesting. نعم لأنها شيقة

**8- Do you like the end of the story ? Why ? هل أعجبتك نهاية القصة؟ لماذا؟**

- ⇒ Yes, I like it because the mystery was solved and the thieves were caught.

**9- Why did John Clay have the idea for the Red-Headed League?**

- ⇒ Because his friend Mr Ross had red hair.
- ⇒ Because they wanted Mr Wilson out of his shop

**10- why did clay and Ross want Mr Wilson out of his shop?**

- ⇒ To dig the tunnel

**11- Why did Holmes suspect Mr Spaulding?**

- ⇒ As it was unusual for him to work in the cellar.

**12- Why did the thieves plan to take the gold on Saturday?**

- ⇒ To have a day and a half to escape before the bank opened on Monday.

**13- How do you think that Holmes knew that Spaulding was digging tunnel?**

- ⇒ When he saw that the knees of his trousers were dirty and had holes.

**14- When do you think clay and Ross finished digging the tunnel?**

- ⇒ I think when they closed the red-headed league

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- Mr. Spaulding	a- was John Clay's friend.
2- The thieves were digging	b- was one of the thieves.
3- Mr. Spaulding's trousers	c- a tunnel when Mr. Wilson was out.
4- Mr. Ross	d- were clean.
	e- were dirty and had holes.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- Mr. Spaulding	a- was John Clay's friend.
2- The thieves were digging	b- was one of the thieves.
3- Mr. Spaulding's trousers	c- a tunnel when Mr. Wilson was out.
4- Mr. Ross	d- were clean.
	e- were dirty and had holes.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- Holmes looked at	a- visited China in the past.
2- Dr. Watson visited	b- Mr Wilson's face, hands and clothes.
3- Wilson asked Holmes to	c- was a rich man.
4- Holmes deduced that Wilson	d- solve a mystery.
	e- Holmes in his house.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- Mr Wilson accepted the job with	a- was Sherlock Holmes' friend.
2- The person who would get the job	b- pushed pass all the men outside the office.
3- Mr. Spaulding	c- couldn't leave the office during work.
4- Mr Wilson	d- the Red-Headed League.
	e- decided that Holmes was a wonderful detective.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- The Red-Headed League was closed,	a- be a labourer.
2- Holmes asked Mr. Wilson some questions	b- Holmes went passed Mr Wilson's shop.
3- On his way to the violin concert,	c- the manager of the office.
4- Mr. Wilson used to	d- but no one knew why.
	e- about his assistant, Mr. Spaulding.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- The Red-Headed League was	a- the encyclopaedia into a book.
2- Mr. Wilson copied information from	b- at the end of each week.
3- Mr. Wilson received £4	c- an advert in the newspaper.
4- Mr. Spaulding showed Mr. Wilson	d- closed suddenly.
	e- a violin concert.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- The four men took two taxis to	a- catch a famous thief called John Clay.
2- Holmes asked Dr. Watson to	b- Mr. Merryweather's bank.
3- Sherlock Holmes hoped to	c- meet him at ten o'clock at Baker Street.
4- Peter Jones	d- was the manager of the bank.
	e- was an important policeman in London.

**Match column ( A ) with column ( B ):**

(A)	(B)
1- The thieves were interested	a- was the manager of the bank.
2- The four men waited for	b- in the gold in the cellar.
3- The four men took taxis	c- to the bank behind Mr. Wilson's shop.
4- Mr. Merryweather	d- the thieves to arrive.
	e- was a famous detective in London.